The essentials of imaging



# bizhub 501/421/361

# User's Guide [Network Administrator]



# Introduction

Thank you for purchasing this machine.

This User's Guide describes setting methods for each function utilizing bizhub 501/421/361, mainly using the PageScope Web Connection. In order to allow functionality of this product fully and to use it effectively, please read through this User's Guide, and then get started.

In order to operate the product safely and properly, be sure to read the Quick Guide [Copy/Print/Fax/Scan/Box Operations].

For descriptions on trademarks and copyrights, refer to the [Trademarks/Copyrights].

Illustrations shown in the User's Guide may differ from actual machine.

## **Table of contents**

# Introduction

Table of	contents	x-2
About th	iis manual	x-9
	Contents	
	Representation of product name	
	Explanation of manual conventions	x-10
User's G	iuides	x-12
	Printed manual	x-12
	User's Guide CD manuals	x-12

# **1** Setup items by operation

1.1	Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication	
	Network Settings	
	TCP/IP Settings Device Setting	
1.2	Using PageScope Web Connection	
1.2.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.2.2	PSWC Settings	
1.2.3	TCP Socket Setting	
1.2.4	SSL/TLS Setting	
1.3	Logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection	
1.4	Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication	1-8
1.4.1	Create a self-signed Certificate	1-9
1.4.2	Request a Certificate	1-10
1.4.3	Install a Certificate	1-11
1.4.4	Set an Encryption Strength	1-12
1.4.5	Set Mode using SSL	1-13
1.4.6	Remove a certificate	1-13
1.5	Acquiring the certificate for this machine	1-14
1.5.1	Create a certificate	1-14
1.5.2	Download a certificate	1-14
1.6	Registering a user certificate in this machine	1-15
1.6.1	E-mail Address	1-15
1.6.2	Automatically Obtain Certificates	1-16
1.7	Specifying the date and time on this machine	1-18
1.7.1	Manual Setting	1-18
1.7.2	TCP/IP Settings	1-19
1.7.3	Time Zone	1-19
1.7.4	Time Adjustment Setting	1-19
1.8	Sending scan data to a Windows computer	1-21
1.8.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-21
1.8.2	Client Setting	1-22
1.8.3	Direct Hosting Setting	1-23
1.8.4	WINS Setting	1-24
1.9	Sending scan data by E-mail	1-25
1.9.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-25
1.9.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
	Admin. E-mail Address	
1.9.3	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS E-mail TX (SMTP)	
	Action for Invalid Certificate	

1.9.4	SMTP Authentication	1-29
1.9.5	POP before SMTP	1-29
	POP before SMTP	
	E-mail RX (POP)	
1.9.6	POP over SSL	
	E-mail RX (POP) Action for Invalid Certificate	
107	APOP Authentication	
1.9.7		
1.10	Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)	
1.10.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.10.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
1.10.3	Create a certificate	
1.10.4	S/MIME	
1.10.5	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	
1.10.6	SMTP Authentication	
1.10.7	POP before SMTP	
1.10.8	POP over SSL	
1.10.9	APOP Authentication	
1.11	Sending scan data by E-mail (Public key-based encryption)	1-36
1.11.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-36
1.11.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	1-36
1.11.3	S/MIME	1-37
1.11.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	1-37
1.11.5	SMTP Authentication	1-37
1.11.6	POP before SMTP	1-37
1.11.7	POP over SSL	1-37
1.11.8	APOP Authentication	1-38
1.12	Searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server	1-39
1.12.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.12.2	Manual Destination Input	
1.12.3	LDAP Setting	
1.12.4	Setting Up LDAP	
1.12.5	LDAP over SSL	1-42
	Setting Up LDAP	
	Action for Invalid Certificate	1-43
1.12.6	DNS Server Settings	1-43
1.12.7	Date/Time Setting	1-43
1.13	Sending scan data by FTP	1-44
1.13.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-44
1.13.2	FTP TX Setting	1-45
1.14	Sending scan data by WebDAV	1-46
1.14.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.14.2	WebDAV Settings	
1.14.3	WebDAV over SSL	
1.15	Sending an Internet fax	
1.15.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.15.1	Internet Fax Function	
1.15.2	Regist machine information	
1.10.0	Device Mail Address	
	Machine Setting	
1.15.4	Header Information	1-53
1.15.5	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
1.15.6	I-Fax Advanced Setting	
1.15.7	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	
1.15.8	SMTP Authentication	
1.15.9	POP before SMTP	
		-

1.15.10	POP over SSL	1-55
1.15.11	APOP Authentication	1-55
1.16	Receiving Internet faxes	1-56
1.16.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-56
1.16.2	Internet Fax Function	1-56
1.16.3	E-mail RX (POP)	1-57
1.16.4	I-Fax Advance Setting	1-58
1.16.5	POP over SSL	1-58
1.16.6	APOP Authentication	1-58
1.17	Sending and receiving IP address faxes	1-59
1.17.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-59
1.17.2	IP Address Fax Function	1-59
1.17.3	SMTP TX Setting	1-60
1.17.4	SMTP RX Setting	1-61
1.17.5	Header Information	1-61
1.18	Importing images in the box using the TWAIN scan	1-62
1.18.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.18.2	SLP Setting	1-62
1.18.3	TCP Socket Setting	
1.19	Printing (LPR/Port9100)	
1.19.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.19.2	LPD Setting	
1.19.3	RAW Port Number	
1.20	Printing (SMB)	
1.20.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.20.1	Print Setting	
1.20.2	WINS Setting	
1.20.3	Direct Hosting Setting	
-		
1.21	Printing (IPP)	
1.21.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.21.2	IPP Setting	
1.21.3	IPP Authentication Setting	
1.22	Printing (IPPS)	
1.22.1	TCP/IP Setting	
1.22.2	IPP Setting	
1.22.3	SSL/TLS Setting	
1.22.4	IPP Authentication Setting	
1.23	Printing (Bonjour)	
	Bonjour Setting	1-/1
1.24	Printing (AppleTalk)	
	AppleTalk Setting	1-72
1.25	Printing (NetWare)	1-73
1.25.1	NetWare Setting	
	For Remote Printer mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation	
	For the print server mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation For NetWare 4.x Remote Printer mode (NDS)	
	For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server mode (NDS)	
	For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)	
1.25.2	NetWare Status	
1.26	Using the WS print function	
1.26.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.26.2	Web Service Common Settings	
1.26.3	Printer Settings	
1.20.3	Using the WS scan function	
1.21	บรทาง และ พ.ว.ระสม เกมาะการการการการการการการการการการการการการก	

1.27.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-80
1.27.2	Web Service Common Settings	
1.27.3	Scanner Settings	
1.28	Using SSL for communication from Vista/7/Server 2008 to this machine with Web service	
1.28.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.28.2	SSL/TLS Setting	
1.28.3	Web Service Common Settings	
	-	
1.29	Using SSL for communication from this machine to Vista/7/Server 2008 with Web service	
1.29.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.29.2	Web Service Common Settings	
1.29.3	Action for Invalid Certificate	
1.30	Monitoring this machine using the SNMP manager	
1.30.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.30.2	NetWare Setting	
1.30.3	SNMP Setting	1-88
1.31	Providing notification of the status of this machine (E-mail)	1-90
1.31.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-90
1.31.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	1-90
1.31.3	Status Notification Setting	1-91
1.31.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	1-92
1.31.5	SMTP Authentication	1-92
1.31.6	POP before SMTP	1-92
1.31.7	POP over SSL	1-92
1.31.8	APOP Authentication	1-92
1.32	Providing notification of the status of this machine (TRAP)	1-93
1.32.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.32.2	NetWare Setting	
1.32.3	TRAP Setting	
1.32.4	Status Notification Setting	
1.33	Providing notification of the counter information status of this machine via E-mail	
1.33.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.33.2	E-mail TX (SMTP)	
1.33.3	Total Counter Notification Setting	
1.33.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	
1.33.4	SMTP Authentication	
1.33.6	POP before SMTP	
1.33.6		
	POP over SSL	
1.33.8	APOP Authentication	
1.33.9	Meter Count	
1.34	Limiting users using this machine (Machine authentication)	
1.34.1	User Auth/Account Track	
1.34.2	User Registration	
1.34.3	Account Track Registration	
1.35	Limiting users using this machine (Active Directory)	. 1-104
1.35.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-104
1.35.2	External Server Registration	1-105
1.35.3	User Auth/Account Track	1-106
1.35.4	Default Function Permission	1-107
1.35.5	Date/Time Setting	1-107
1.36	Limiting users using this machine (Windows domain/workgroup)	. 1-108
1.36.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.36.2	External Server Registration	
1.36.3	User Auth/Account Track	
1.36.4	Default Function Permission	

1.36.5	Client Setting	1-111
1.36.6	WINS Setting	1-111
1.36.7	Direct Hosting Setting	1-111
1.37	Limiting users using this machine (NDS)	. 1-112
1.37.1	External Server Registration	
1.37.2	User Auth/Account Track	1-113
1.37.3	Default Function Permission	1-113
1.37.4	NetWare Setting	1-114
1.38	Limiting users using this machine (NDS over TCP/IP)	. 1-115
1.38.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.38.2	External Server Registration	
1.38.3	User Auth/Account Track	
1.38.4	Default Function Permission	
1.39	Limiting users using this machine (LDAP)	
1.39.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.39.2	External Server Registration	
1.39.3	User Auth/Account Track	
1.39.4	Default Function Permission	
1.39.5	LDAP over SSL	
	External Server Registration	
	Action for Invalid Certificate	1-121
1.40	Performing IP address filtering	. 1-122
1.40.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.40.2	IP Filtering	
1.41	Communicating using IPv6	. 1-124
	TCP/IP Setting	
1.42	Communicating using IPsec	. 1-127
1.42.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-127
1.42.2	IPsec	1-128
1.42.3	IKE Setting	1-129
1.42.4	SA Setting	1-129
1.42.5	Peer	1-130
1.43	Authentication of IEEE802.1X	. 1-131
1.43.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-131
1.43.2	Installation of the client certificate	1-131
1.43.3	Installation of CA Certificate	1-132
1.43.4	IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting	1-133
1.43.5	IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial	1-135
1.44	Using the TCP Socket/OpenAPI function	. 1-136
1.44.1	TCP/IP Settings	1-136
1.44.2	SSL/TLS Setting	1-136
1.44.3	TCP Socket Setting	1-137
1.44.4	OpenAPI Setting	1-138
1.44.5	SSDP Setting	1-139
1.45	Using FTP server/WebDAV server functions	. 1-140
1.45.1	TCP/IP Settings	
1.45.2	SSL/TLS Setting	
1.45.3	FTP Server Setting	
1.45.4	WebDAV Server Settings	
1.46	Other items on the Maintenance tab	
1.46.1	Using external memory	
	External Memory Function Settings	
1.46.2	Using the timer function	
	Power Save Setting Weekly Timer Setting	
	······	

1.46.3	Importing or exporting setting information Import/Export	
1.46.4	Resetting setting information Network Setting Clear	
	Reset Format All Destination	
1.46.5	Specifying support information Online Assistance	1-149
1.46.6	Registering the header or footer Header/Footer Registration	1-150
1.46.7	Checking the ROM version ROM Version	1-151
1.46.8	Extending functions of MFP Get Request Code	
	Install License	
1.47	Other items on the Security tab	
1.47.1	Limiting accessible destinations by user Reference Allowed Group Registration Public User Reference Setting	1-154
1.47.2	Restricting address registration by a user	
1. I <i>I</i> .	Permission of Address Change	
1.47.3	Specifying the auto logout time Auto Logout	
1.47.4	Specifying the administrator password Administrator Password Setting	
1.48	Box tab settings	1-158
1.48.1	Changing user box settings or deleting a user box Open User Box	
1.48.2	Creating a new user box Create User Box	
1.48.3	Changing system box settings or deleting system boxes Open System User Box	
1.48.4	Creating a new system user box Create System User Box	
1.49	Print Setting tab settings	1-163
1.49.1	Specifying initial settings for the print function Basic Setting	1-163 1-163
1.49.2	Specifying settings for PCL/PS/XPS print PCL Settings	
	PS Setting	
	TIFF/PDF Setting XPS Settings	
1.49.3	Specifying the interface timeout	
	Interface Setting	
1.50	Store Address tab settings	1-168
1.50.1	Registering or editing an address book destination	1-168
1 50 0	Icon Registering or editing a group destination	
1.50.2	Registering or editing a group destination	
1.50.3	Registering or editing a program destination Program address	
1.50.4	Registering or editing destinations to be temporarily used Temporary One-Touch	
1.50.5	Registering E-mail subject or text	
	Subject Text	
1.50.6	Using an application registered in an external server	

	Application Registration	1-186
1.50.7	Simplifying E-mail address entry	
	Prefix/Suffix	1-188

# 2 Network Settings

2.1	Displaying the Network Settings screen	2-2
2.2	Network Settings menu list	2-4
2.2.1	Network Settings screen (1/2)	2-4
2.2.2	Network Settings screen (2/2)	2-14

# 3 Appendix

3.1	Product Specifications (Network functions)	3-2
3.2	Glossary	3-3

### 4 Index

4.1	Index	4-2
-----	-------	-----

#### About this manual

This document is a user's guide summarizing setup procedures for enabling effective usages of the product utilizing the networking functions. For copy, scan, box, and fax operations, refer to the respective User's Guides.

This manual is intended for persons with basic knowledge of computers and the copier. For details on the Windows or Macintosh operating systems, or software applications, refer to the respective manuals.

#### Contents

This manual consists of the following chapters:

Chapter 1 Setup items by operation

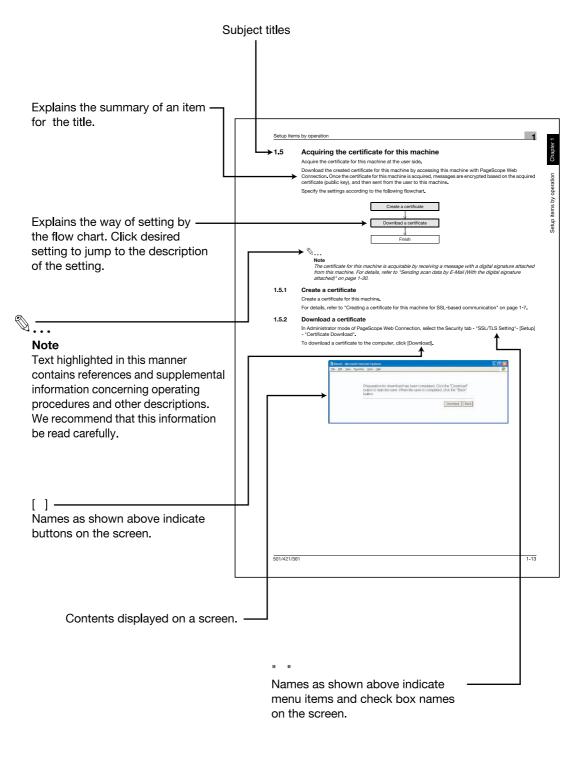
Chapter 2 Network Settings

Chapter 3 Appendix

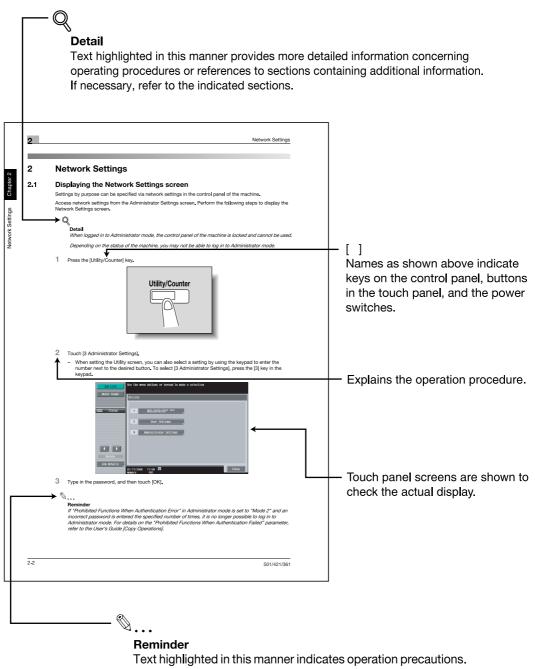
Chapter 4 Index

#### **Representation of product name**

Product name	Representation
bizhub 501/421/361	Machine, copier, or printer
Microsoft Windows	Windows



(The page shown above is an example only.)



Carefully read and observe this type of information.

(The page shown above is an example only.)

#### **User's Guides**

This machine is provided with printed manuals and PDF manuals on the User's Guide CD.

#### **Printed manual**

#### Quick Guide [Copy/Print/Fax/Scan/Box Operations]

This manual contains operating procedures and descriptions of the most frequently used functions, allowing the machine to immediately be used.

In addition, this manual contains notes and precautions that should be followed for safe use of the machine.

Be sure to read this manual before using the machine.

#### **User's Guide CD manuals**

#### User's Guide [Copy Operations]

This manual contains descriptions of the Copy mode operations and machine maintenance.

Refer to this manual for details on the paper and originals, copy procedures using convenient Application functions, replacing consumables, and troubleshooting operations such as clearing paper misfeeds.

#### User's Guide [Enlarge Display Operations]

This manual contains details on operating procedures in Enlarge Display mode.

Refer to this manual for details on using copy, scanner, G3 fax, and network fax operations in Enlarge Display mode.

#### User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)]

This manual contains details of the printing functions that can be specified with the optional image controller.

Refer to this manual for operating procedures on using the printing functions.

#### User's Guide [Box Operations]

This manual contains operating procedures for using the user boxes on the optional hard disk.

Refer to this manual for details on saving data in user boxes, retrieving data from user boxes and transferring data.

#### User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]

This manual contains details on the network scan, G3 fax, and network fax operations.

Refer to this manual for details on using network scan function by E-Mail or FTP, G3 fax, Internet fax and IP address fax operations.

In order to use the fax functions, the optional fax kit must be purchased separately.

#### User's Guide [Fax Driver Operations]

This manual contains details of the fax driver functions that can be used to send a fax directly from a computer.

Refer to this manual for operating procedures on using the PC-FAX functions.

In order to use the fax functions, the optional fax kit must be purchased separately.

#### User's Guide [Network Administrator] (this manual)

This manual contains descriptions on setting methods for each function utilizing network connection, mainly using the PageScope Web Connection.

Refer to this manual for details on using network functions.

#### User's Guide [Advanced Function Operations]

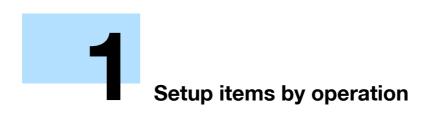
The descriptions and the directions for use are given of each of the functions that can be used effectively by registering the license kit optionally provided and each of the functions that can be used by linking up with the application.

In order to make an effective use of each function, refer to the User's Guide.

#### Trademarks/Copyrights

This manual contains descriptions on trademarks and copyrights.

Be sure to read this manual before using the machine



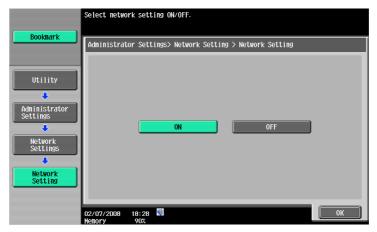
# 1 Setup items by operation

# 1.1 Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. To use this machine by connecting to the network, specify these settings in advance.

#### **Network Settings**

On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] - [1 Network Settings] - [0N].



# ۵...

#### Note

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 2-2.

# ☜...

#### Reminder

In order to apply all changes to the network settings, turn off this machine, then on again.

When turning off the main power switch and turning it on again, wait for 10 seconds or longer after power-off, and then turn on the power again. The machine may not operate correctly if it is turned on immediately after being turned off.

#### **TCP/IP Settings**

On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] - [2 TCP/IP Settings]. Specify the following settings.

# ۵...

#### Note

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 2-2.

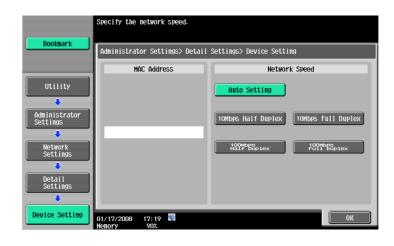


Item	tem Definition	
TCP/IP Settings	Select [ON].	
IP Application Method	Select whether the IP address is automatically acquired or directly specified.	IP application method to be used
IP Application Method Auto Setting	To automatically acquire the IP address, select the automat- ic acquisition method.	
IP Address	To directly specify the IP address, specify the IP address of this machine.	IP address of this ma- chine
Subnet Mask	To directly specify the IP address, specify the subnet mask of the network to be connected.	Subnet mask of this ma- chine
Default Gateway	To directly specify the IP address, specify the default gate- way of the network to be connected.	Default gateway of this machine
Dynamic DNS Settings	To automatically register the host name specified with [DNS Host Name] for the DNS server that supports the Dynamic DNS function, select [Enable].	Whether Dynamic DNS is used
DNS Host Name	Specify the host name of this machine (up to 63 characters).	
DNS Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Select whether to automatically acquire the name of the DNS domain. This item is enabled when the DHCP is enabled.	Whether automatic ac- quisition is available with DHCP
Default DNS Domain Name	If not acquiring the DNS domain name automatically, specify the domain name to which this machine belongs (up to 255 characters including the host name).	Default Domain Name
DNS Search Domain Name 1 to 3	Specify the DNS search domain name (up to 253 characters including the host name).	
DNS Server Auto Obtain	Specify whether to automatically acquire the DNS server ad- dress. This item is enabled when the DHCP is enabled.	Whether automatic ac- quisition is available with DHCP
Priority DNS Server	If not automatically acquiring the DNS server address, spec- ify the address of the priority DNS server.	Address of the server
Secondary DNS Server 1 and 2	Specify the address of an alternate DNS server.	Address of the server

#### **Device Setting**

On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] - [Forward] - [8 Detail Settings] - [1 Device Setting].

Specify the following settings.



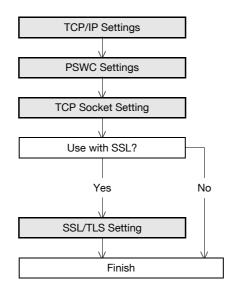
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the network interface card for this machine.	
Network Speed	Specify the network speed.	

### 1.2 Using PageScope Web Connection

Specify settings for using PageScope Web Connection. This manual describes how to specify settings required for each operation using PageScope Web Connection.

PageScope Web Connection is a device management utility supported by the HTTP server integrated into this machine. Using a Web browser on a computer connected to the network, machine settings can be specified and the status of the machine can be checked. Some settings can be specified from the computer instead of from the machine control panel.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.2.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.2.2 PSWC Settings

On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] - [4 HTTP Server Settings].

Specify the following setting.

☜...

#### Note

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 2-2.

	Specify the http settings.	
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Network Settings > HTTP Server Settings	
	ON OFF 1 /4 ←Back	For- Ward →
Utility	PSWC Settings	
+		
Administrator Settings		
+	ON OFF	
Network Settings		
+		
HTTP Server Settings		
	01/17/2008 17:22 🕅 Menory 90%	ОК

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
PSWC Settings	Select [ON].	

.

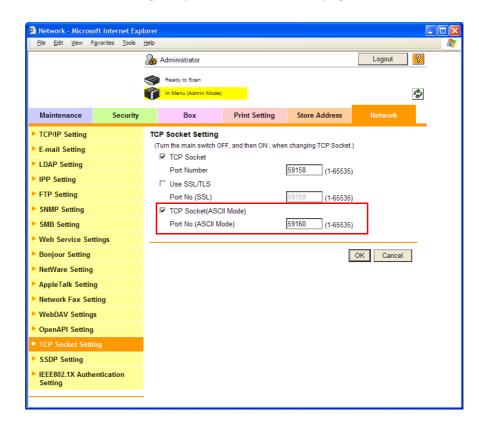
#### 1.2.3 TCP Socket Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP Socket Setting". Specify the following settings.

۵...

#### Note

For details on logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, refer to "Logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection" on page 1-7.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)	To use in the Flash format, select the "TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)" check box.	
Port No. (ASCII Mode)	Specify the port number.	

#### 1.2.4 SSL/TLS Setting

Specifying settings for SSL-based communication

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

# **1.3 Logging in to Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection**

To specify settings for this machine with PageScope Web Connection, Administrator mode must be logged in. The following shows how to log in to Administrator mode.



When logged in to Administrator mode, the control panel of the machine is locked and cannot be used.

Depending on the status of the machine, you may not be able to log in to Administrator mode.

- 1 In the login page, select "Administrator", and then click the [Login] button.
  - If necessary, select the display language and format. If "When in warning, the dialog is displayed." check box is selected, warning messages appear during operation after logging in.

avorites Iools Help		eb Connection	
Language	OS Language (OS	Language)	
Login	C Public User		_
	<ul> <li>Administrator</li> </ul>		_
View Mode	⊂ Flash Flash Player is ne		
User Assist	UWhen in warnir	ng, the dialog is displayed.	_
		Login	

2 Enter the password for the machine's administrator.

2 Login - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
Elle Edit View Favorites Iools Help	<u></u>
KONICA MINOLIA	
Administrator Password	
OK Cancel	

3 Click the [OK] button.

The Administrator mode page appears.

۵...

#### Reminder

If "Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error" in Administrator mode is set to "Mode 2" and an incorrect password is entered the specified number of times, it is no longer possible to log in to Administrator mode. For details on the "Prohibited Functions When Authentication Failed" parameter, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].

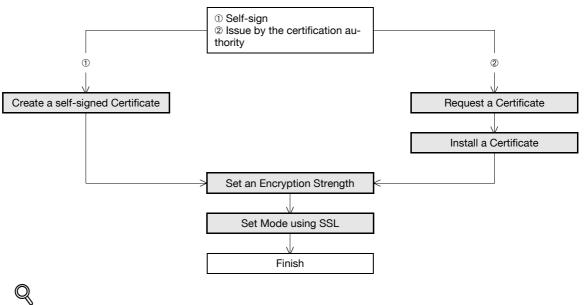
501/421/361

# **1.4** Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication

Specify settings to create a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication.

Creating a certificate for this machine encrypts communication from a client computer to this machine using SSL in order to prevent disclosure of communication contents and password.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### Detail

When specifying the following settings, communication from a client computer to this machine can be encrypted using SSL. For details, refer to the respective sections.

"Using PageScope Web Connection" on page 1-5

"Printing (IPPS)" on page 1-70

"Using SSL for communication from Vista/7/Server 2008 to this machine with Web service" on page 1-83

"Using the TCP Socket/OpenAPI function" on page 1-136

#### 1.4.1 Create a self-signed Certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - [Setup] - "Create a self-signed Certificate".

Specify the following settings.

Security - Microsoft Internet Exp					
Elle Edit View Favorites Iools	Help Administrator Ready to Scan In Menu (Admin Mode)				?
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication  User Registration  Account Track Registration  SSL/TLS Setting  SSL/TLS Setting  Action for Invalid Certificate  Installation of CA Certificates  Address Reference Setting  Permission of Address Change  Auto Logout	Create a self-signed Common Name Organization Organizational Unit Locality State/Province Country Admin. E-mail Address Validity Start Date Validity Period	1( [ [ ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ] ]	0.11.32.53		-
- Auto Logout	Encryption Strength Mode using SSL/TLS		4-128, 3DES-168, AES Imin. Mode and User N		-

Item	Prior confirmation	
Common Name	Displays the IP address or domain name of the machine.	
Organization	Enter the name of the organization or group used for creating an organization certificate (up to 63 characters).	
Organizational Unit	Enter the name of the account used for creating an account certificate (up to 63 characters).	
Locality	Enter the name of the locality used for creating a locality cer- tificate (up to 127 characters).	
State/Province	Enter the name of the state/province used for creating a state/province certificate (up to 127 characters).	
Country	When creating a country certificate, enter a two-character country code regulated by ISO 3166. United States: US, Great Britain: GB, Italy: IT, Australia: AU, The Netherlands: NL, Canada: CA, Spain: ES, Czech Repub- lic: CZ, China: CN, Denmark: DK, Germany: DE, Japan: JP, France: FR, Belgium: BE, Russia: RU	
Admin. E-mail Address	Enter the address for the administrator (up to 128 charac- ters).	Address for the adminis- trator
Validity Start Date	Enter the starting date for the period of validity. Displays the date and time when this page was displayed.	
Validity Period	Enter the number of days from the starting date for the peri- od of validity for the certificate.	
Encryption Strength	Specify the encryption method.	
Mode using SSL/TLS	Specify the mode using SSL/TLS.	
[OK]	Creates a self-signed certificate. It may take a few minutes to create a certificate.	

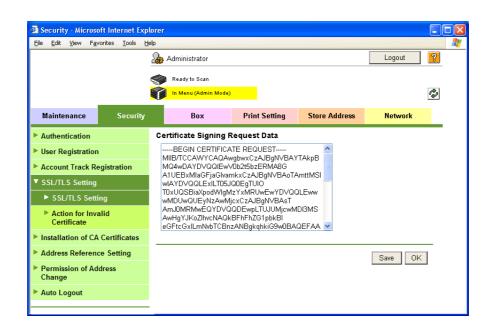
#### **1.4.2 Request a Certificate**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - [Setup] - "Request a Certificate".

Specify the following settings.

Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help				1
	Administrator			Logout	2
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	Request a Certificate	1			
User Registration	Common Name	1	0.11.32.53		
Account Track Registration	Organization	Ĺ			
▼ SSL/TLS Setting	Organizational Unit	L			
SSL/TLS Setting	Locality				
Action for Invalid	State/Province				
Certificate	Country	Γ			
Installation of CA Certificates	Admin. E-mail Address		admin@example.com		
Address Reference Setting					
Permission of Address Change				OK Cancel	
Auto Logout					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Common Name	Displays the IP address or domain name of the machine.	
Organization	Enter the name of the organization or group used for creating an organization certificate (up to 63 characters).	
Organizational Unit	Enter the name of the account used for creating an account certificate (up to 63 characters).	
Locality	Enter the name of the locality used for creating a locality cer- tificate (up to 127 characters).	
State/Province	Enter the name of the state or province used for creating a state/province certificate (up to 127 characters).	
Country	When creating a country certificate, enter a two-character country code regulated by ISO 3166. United States: US, Great Britain: GB, Italy: IT, Australia: AU, The Netherlands: NL, Canada: CA, Spain: ES, Czech Repub- lic: CZ, China: CN, Denmark: DK, Germany: DE, Japan: JP, France: FR, Belgium: BE, Russia: RU	
Admin. E-mail Address	Specify the address for the administrator (up to 128 charac- ters).	Address for the adminis- trator
[OK]	Creates certificate signing request data.	



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Certificate Signing Re- quest Data	Displays certificate signing request data.	
[Save]	Saves certificate signing request data in the computer as a file.	

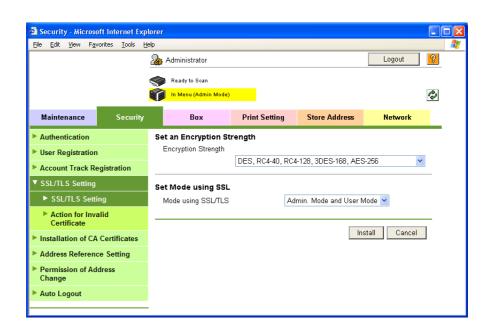
#### 1.4.3 Install a Certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - [Setup] - "Install a Certificate".

After requesting a certificate to the certification authority, install the certificate sent from the certification authority on this machine.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> voi	ites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u>	telp			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan	)			Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Install a Certificate				
<ul> <li>User Registration</li> <li>Account Track Registration</li> <li>SSL/TLS Setting</li> </ul>		aLrQgBN+BwqUpÁG iIGHNIPEKuS1NI8DF 5pQkqBOQqvLzTTyN	(P+DsKmpfZtwWzntN2 3vn1UIB7B1I º4EitDAn+/qh4g0ifnb3u	uo26gbt		
<ul> <li>SSL/TLS Setting</li> <li>Action for Inval Certificate</li> </ul>		NM= END CERTIFICAT	E REQUEST			_
Installation of CA (	Certificates				OK Cancel	1
Address Reference	Setting			1		1
Permission of Add Change	ess					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Install a Certificate	Paste text data sent from the certification authority.	
[OK]	Moves to the Set an Encryption Strength and Set Mode us- ing SSL screen.	



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Encryption Strength	Specify the encryption method.	
Mode using SSL/TLS	Specify the SSL/TLS application range.	
[Install]	Installs the certificate.	

#### **1.4.4** Set an Encryption Strength

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - [Setup] - "Set an Encryption Strength".

Specify the following setting.

Eile Edit View Favor	ites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u>	Help				
		🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Set an Encryption St	trength			
User Registration		Encryption Strength		4-128, 3DES-168, AES		1
Account Track Reg	istration		DES, RC4-40, RC4	4-120, JUES-160, AE	5-200	
▼ SSL/TLS Setting					OK Cancel	1
SSL/TLS Setting	J			1	UK Cancel	
Action for Invali Certificate	d					
Installation of CA C	ertificates					
Address Reference	Setting					
Permission of Addr Change	ess					
Auto Logout						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Encryption Strength	If necessary, change the set encryption strength. Specify the encryption strength.	



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - [Setup] - "Set Mode using SSL".

Specify the following setting.

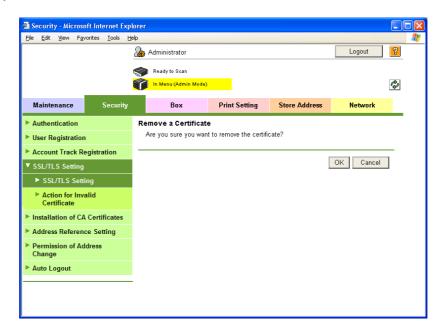
Eile Edit View Favo	rites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u>	elp 🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
_		In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Set Mode using SSL				
User Registration		Mode using SSL/TLS	Æ	Admin. Mode and User	Mode 🔽	
Account Track Reg	gistration					_
▼ SSL/TLS Setting				[	OK Cancel	
SSL/TLS Settin	g					
Action for Inval Certificate	lid					
Installation of CA	Certificates					
Address Reference	e Setting					
Permission of Add Change	ress					
Auto Logout						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Mode using SSL/TLS	If necessary, change the set SSL/TSL application range. Specify the SSL/TLS application range.	

#### 1.4.6 Remove a certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - [Setup] - "Remove a Certificate".

If necessary, remove the certificate installed on this machine. To remove the installed certificate, click [OK].



## Q Detail

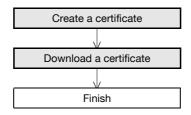
If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", the certificate cannot be removed.



Acquire the certificate for this machine at the user side.

Download the created certificate for this machine by accessing this machine with PageScope Web Connection. Once the certificate for this machine is acquired, messages are encrypted based on the acquired certificate (public key), and then sent from the user to this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# Q

Detail

Users can acquire the certificate for this machine by receiving a message with a digital signature attached from this machine. For details on sending E-Mails with the digital signature attached, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)" on page 1-33.

#### 1.5.1 Create a certificate

Create a certificate for this machine.

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

#### 1.5.2 Download a certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting"- [Setup] - "Certificate Download".

To download a certificate to the computer, click [Download].

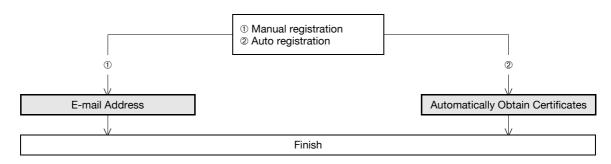
🕘 Re	esult -	Micro	soft Inter	net Exp	lorer	
Eile	<u>E</u> dit	⊻iew	Favorites	⊺ools	Help	
			b		ation for dowmload has been completed. Click the "Download" o start the save. When the save is completed, click the "Back" Download Back	

# **1.6** Registering a user certificate in this machine

Register a user certificate in this machine

When registering a certificate in this machine, the following methods are available: manual registration at the time of E-mail address registration and auto registration by sending a message with a digital signature attached. Once the certificate for this machine is registered, messages are encrypted based on the registered certificate (Public key), and then sent from the user to this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.6.1 E-mail Address

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Address Book" - [New Registration] - "Address Book (E-mail)".

Specify the following setting.

Store Address - Microsoft Internet		
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help	
	Administrator Logout ?	
	Ready to Scan	
	👔 In Menu (Admin Mode)	
Maintenance Security	Box Print Setting Store Address Network	
▼ Address Book	Address Book (E-mail)	
Store Address	No.	
► Icon	Use opening number     Direct Input	
► Group	Name	
▶ Program	Index	
Temporary One-Touch	Specify a keyword for address search and display by registered name.	
Subject	ABC 🔽	
► Text	□ Main	
► Prefix/Suffix	Destination Information	
Header Information	E-mail Address	
	Registration of Certification Information	
	© Registration of Certification Information	
	Browse	
	C Deletion of Certification Information	
	Limiting Access to Destinations	
	Display	
	OK Cancel	

-

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Registration of Certifica- tion Information	Select the "Registration of Certification Information" check box. To specify a storage location of certification information to be registered, click [Browse]. Only files in the DER (Distinguished Encoding Rules) format are supported for certificate information. To delete the certificate information, select "Deletion of Cer- tification Information".	Certificate storage loca- tion



#### Reminder

If the E-mail address to be registered does not match the E-mail address of the certificate, the certificate cannot be registered. Confirm whether both E-mail addresses match, and then register the certificate.

#### 1.6.2 Automatically Obtain Certificates

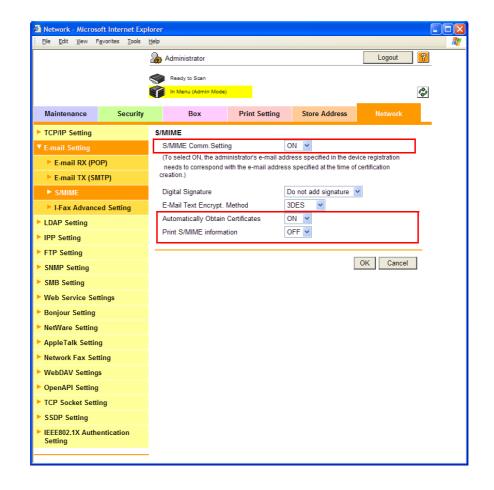
In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "S/MIME".

Specify the following settings.

# Q

#### Detail

When the optional hard disk is not installed, this menu is not displayed.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
Automatically Obtain Certificates	Select "ON".	
Print S/MIME informa- tion	If you want to print the S/MINE information, make a selection of [ON].	

-



#### Q Detail

The E-mail address of a user with whom you want to register a certificate is required to be registered in advance on this machine.

For [Automatically Obtain Certificates], an E-mail is required to be received by this machine. For details of settings for the reception of an E-mail, refer to *p. 1-56*.

When the conditions given above are met, send an E-mail attached with a digital signature to this machine from the computer on the network. Only when the E-mail address of a user registered on this machine coincides with the E-mail address that has been registered on the certificate received, the certificate is automatically registered.

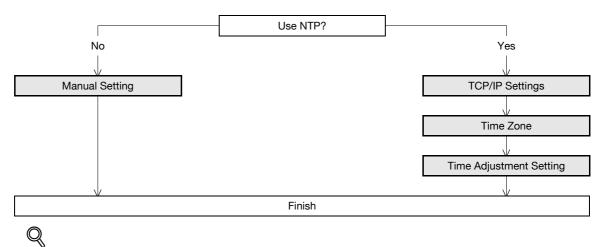
# **1.7** Specifying the date and time on this machine

Specify the date and time of the internal clock of this machine.

The following specification methods are available: manual specification and acquisition from the NTP server via the network.

To use the fax function on this machine, specify the date and time of this machine in advance. Also, to make this machine log in to the Active Directory, it may be necessary to specify the date and time of this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### Detail

The following sections contain descriptions on the settings to make this machine log in to the Active Directory. For details, refer to the respective sections. **"Searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server" on page 1-39 "Limiting users using this machine (Active Directory)" on page 1-104** 

#### 1.7.1 Manual Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Date/Time Setting" - "Manual Setting".

Specify the following settings.

Maintenance - Microsoft Internet Elle Edit View Favorites Tools	Explorer Help				
; The Forc Texa (Baoures Tools	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan			[	¢
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	<u></u>
Meter Count	Manual Setting				
ROM Version	Date				
Import/Export	Year Month		2008		
Status Notification Setting	Day		8		
<ul> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> </ul>	Time				
Machine Setting	Hour		22		
Online Assistance	Minute Time Zone		54 GMT 0:00 🗸		
▼ Date/Time Setting	Daylight Saving	n Timo	GWT 0:00 Y		
Manual Setting	Dayigin Savin	y mile	(1-150)		
Time Adjustment Setting				OK Cancel	-
Timer Setting				Calleer	
Reset					
<ul> <li>External Memory Function Settings</li> </ul>					
Header/Footer Registration					
License Settings					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation	
Year	Enter the year.		
Month	Enter the month.		
Day	Enter the day.		
Hour	Enter the hour.		
Minute	Enter the minutes.		
Time Zone	Select the time difference from GMT.	Time zone	
Daylight Saving Time	If necessary, specify the daylight saving time setting.		

#### 1.7.2 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.7.3 Time Zone

On the Manual Setting screen, specify setting for "Time Zone". For details, refer to "Manual Setting" on page 1-18.

#### 1.7.4 Time Adjustment Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Date/Time Setting" - "Time Adjustment Setting".

Specify the following settings.

Elle       Edit       Yew       Favorites       Tools       Hete         Maintenance       Security         Meter Count       Security         Motor Count       Import/Export         Status Notification Setting         Total Counter Notification Setting         Machine Setting         Online Assistance	Administrator Administrator Ready to Scan In Menu (Admin Mode) Box Time Adjustment Sett Time Adjustment Setti NIP Server Address	Print Setting	Store Address	Logout ?
<ul> <li>Meter Count</li> <li>ROM Version</li> <li>Import/Export</li> <li>Status Notification Setting</li> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> <li>Machine Setting</li> </ul>	Ready to Scan Ready to Scan In Menu (Admin Mode) Box Time Adjustment Sett Time Adjustment Sett	Print Setting	Store Address	
Meter Count     ROM Version     Import/Export     Status Notification Setting     Total Counter Notification     Setting     Machine Setting	In Menu (Admin Mode) Box Time Adjustment Sett	Print Setting	Store Address	
<ul> <li>Meter Count</li> <li>ROM Version</li> <li>Import/Export</li> <li>Status Notification Setting</li> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> <li>Machine Setting</li> </ul>	Box Time Adjustment Set Time Adjustment Setti	Print Setting	Store Address	
Meter Count     ROM Version     Import/Export     Status Notification Setting     Total Counter Notification     Setting     Machine Setting	Time Adjustment Set		Store Address	Network
ROM Version     Import/Export     Status Notification Setting     Total Counter Notification     Setting     Machine Setting	Time Adjustment Setti	ting		
<ul> <li>Import/Export</li> <li>Status Notification Setting</li> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> <li>Machine Setting</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>Status Notification Setting</li> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> <li>Machine Setting</li> </ul>	NTP Server Address	ing	ON 💌	
<ul> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> <li>Machine Setting</li> </ul>	NIT Selver Address		Please check to enter	r host name.
Setting Machine Setting			0.0.0.0	
Machine Setting	Port No. Auto Time Adjustment		123 (1-65535)	
0	Polling Interval		24 Hour (1-240)	
	r ennig internal			
▼ Date/Time Setting			Adjust	OK Cancel
Manual Setting			Aujust	Galicer
Time Adjustment Setting				
<ul> <li>Timer Setting</li> </ul>				
Reset				
<ul> <li>External Memory Function Settings</li> </ul>				
Header/Footer Registration				
License Settings				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Time Adjustment Setting	Select "ON".	
NTP Server Address	Specify the NTP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 123 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Auto Time Adjustment	When an automatic time correction is made, select [ON].	
Polling Interval	When [ON] is selected for Auto Time Adjustment, set the polling interval.	
[Adjust]	Connects to the NTP server with the specified conditions to adjust the time.	

#### 1.8 Sending scan data to a Windows computer

Specify settings for sending scan data to a Windows computer.

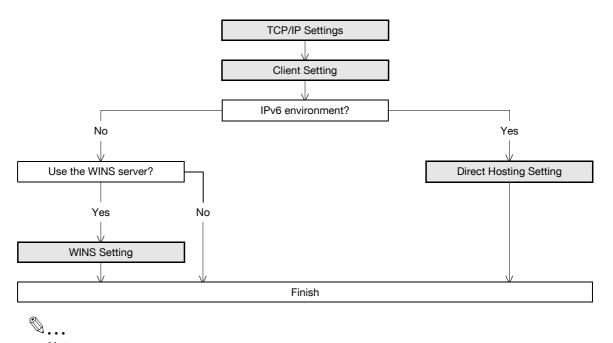
Scan data can be sent directly to a computer specified on the network. In order to perform a Scan to PC (SMB) operation, first specify shared file settings in Windows on the computer receiving the data.

When the Windows name (NetBIOS name) is used to specify a computer on a different network, the WINS server is required to be used.

This machine supports the direct hosting service. When a transmission is made in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting must be enabled.

Enabling the Direct Hosting setting allows you to specify the computer to which a transmission is made with the IPv6 address or the computer (host name). When an address to which a transmission is made is specified with the computer (host name), this machine uses the DNS server to obtain the IPv6 address.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



Note

For details on registering SMB addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

For details on the SMB-based file transmission, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### 1.8.1 **TCP/IP Settings**

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

When a transmission is made in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting must be enabled. When the computer name (Host name) is used to specify a computer, the DNS server is required to be used. Be sure to make the DNS setting of this machine correctly with the DNS server set up.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.8.2 Client Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "SMB Setting" - "Client Setting".

Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Exp Eile Edit View Favorites Iools	Help
	Administrator Logout ?
	Ready to Scan
	👔 In Menu (Admin Mode)
Maintenance Security	Box Print Setting Store Address Network
TCP/IP Setting	Client Setting
E-mail Setting	SMB TX Setting ON 👻
LDAP Setting	NTLM Setting
PP Setting	User Authentication(NTLM) ON
FTP Setting	
SNMP Setting	OK Cancel
SMB Setting	
► WINS Setting	
Client Setting	
Print Setting	
Direct Hosting Setting	
Web Service Settings	
Bonjour Setting	
NetWare Setting	
AppleTalk Setting	
Network Fax Setting	
WebDAV Settings	
• OpenAPI Setting	
TCP Socket Setting	
SSDP Setting	
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMB TX Setting	Select "ON".	
NTLM Setting	Specify the NTLM version. To perform SMB TX to Mac OSX, Samba (Linux/Unix), spec- ify "v1". To perform SMB TX to Windows 98SE/Windows Me, specify "v1/v2" or "v1".	Destination OS

#### 1.8.3 Direct Hosting Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "SMB Setting" - "Direct Hosting Setting".

Specify the following setting.

jie <u>E</u> dit ⊻jew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout ?	_
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			C2	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	_
TCP/IP Setting	Direct Hosting Settin	ng			
E-mail Setting	Direct Hosting Setting		DN 🔽		
LDAP Setting					
IPP Setting				OK Cancel	
FTP Setting					
SNMP Setting					
SMB Setting					
WINS Setting					
Client Setting					
Print Setting					
Direct Hosting Setting					
Web Service Settings					
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
Network Fax Setting					
WebDAV Settings					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setting					
SSDP Setting					
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Direct Hosting Setting	To use the direct hosting service, select "ON". To communicate with the destination using an IPv6 address, select "ON".	Whether the IPv6 envi- ronment is available

#### 1.8.4 WINS Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "SMB Setting" - "WINS Setting".

Specify the following settings.

	Administrator			Logout
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			C.
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	WINS Setting			
E-mail Setting	WINS		ON 🛩	
LDAP Setting	Auto Obtain Setting		Enable 🔽	
IPP Setting	WINS Server Address1		10.11.2.75	
FTP Setting	WINS Server Address2	L	0.0.0.0	
SNMP Setting	Node Type Setting		H Node 🔽	
SMB Setting				
► WINS Setting			l	OK Cancel
Client Setting				
Print Setting				
Direct Hosting Setting				
Web Service Settings				
Bonjour Setting				
NetWare Setting				
AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
WINS	To use the WINS server, select "ON".	
Auto Obtain Setting	To automatically obtain the WINS server address, select "Enable". This item is enabled when the DHCP is enabled.	Whether automatic ac- quisition is available with DHCP
WINS Server Address 1 and 2	Specify the WINS server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255)	Address of the server
Node Type Setting	<ul> <li>Specify the name resolution method.</li> <li>B Node: Query by broadcast</li> <li>P Node: Query to WINS server</li> <li>M Node: Query in the order of broadcast, then WINS server</li> <li>H Node: Query in the order of WINS server, then broadcast</li> </ul>	



Specify settings for sending scan data by E-mail.

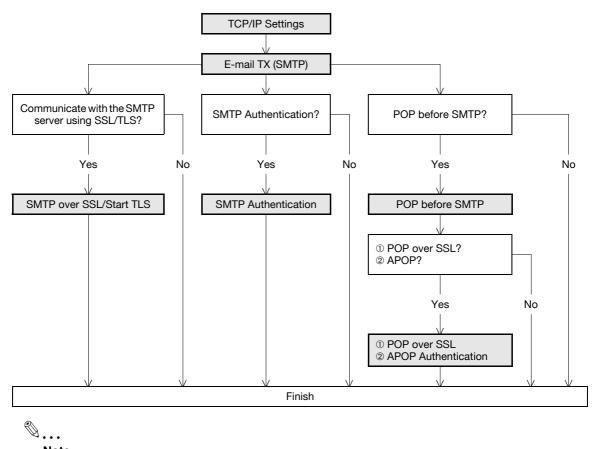
Scan data can be sent to a specified E-mail address as an attached file of the message.

If the SMTP server supports SMTP over SSL or Start TLS, setting is recommended. Because communication can be encrypted by SSL/TLS, the machine can communicate securely with the server.

If the SMTP server requires SMTP authentication, the SMTP authentication setting must be specified.

If the SMTP server requires POP before SMTP authentication, the POP before SMTP authentication setting must be specified. In addition, if the POP server supports POP over SSL or APOP authentication, settings for these can be specified.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### Note

For details on registering E-mail addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

For details on the E-mail-based file transmission, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### 1.9.1 **TCP/IP Settings**

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

## 1.9.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

#### E-mail TX (SMTP)

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Exp Sile Sile Sile Sile Sile Sile Sile Sile					
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help				4
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
				-	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	E-mail TX (SMTP)				
▼ E-mail Setting	E-mail TX Setting				
E-mail RX (POP)	Scan to E-mail		ON 👻		
E-mail TX (SMTP)	E-mail Notification		ON 🛩		
► S/MIME	Total Counter Notifie		ON 🔽		_
I-Fax Advanced Setting	SMTP Server Address		Please check to enter 0.0.0.0	er host name.	
LDAP Setting	Use SSL/TLS				
IPP Setting	Port Number				
FTP Setting	Port No.(SSL)		(,		
SNMP Setting	Connection Timeout		465 (1-65535) 60 vsec.		_
-	Max Mail Size	l	No Limit 🗸		
SMB Setting	Server Capacity		Mbyte(1-100)		
Web Service Settings	Admin. E-mail Address		admin@example.com		
Bonjour Setting	Device Mail Address		0		
NetWare Setting	Authentication Setting				
AppleTalk Setting	POP before SMTP		OFF 🛩		
Network Fax Setting	POP before SMTP	Time	5 sec. (0-60)		
WebDAV Settings	SMTP Authenti	cation .			
OpenAPI Setting	User ID				
TCP Socket Setting	Password				
SSDP Setting	Domain Name				
IEEE802.1X Authentication	Authentication	Setting	Set Value		_
Setting	Binary Division Divided Mail Size		L		
	Divided Iviali Size		Kbyte (100-15000;Step100)		
			(		
				OK Cancel	_
			L	Gitte	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail TX Setting	Select "E-mail TX Setting" check box.	
Scan to E-mail	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server address. (Format: "***.***.", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of sent messages.	
Server Capacity	To limit the maximum mail size, specify the max. allowance of the mail size including the attached file. Mails exceeding the maximum allowance are removed. If a mail is separated, this setting is disabled.	Receiving limit of the server

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Admin. E-mail Address	The administrator address specified in "Machine Setting" in the Maintenance tab in Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection is displayed.	
Binary Division	To divide the mail size, select "Binary Division" check box. If the mail software used for receiving mails does not have the mail restore function, the mails may not be read.	Restore function of the mail soft
Divided Mail Size	To divide the mail, specify a divided mail size.	Receiving limit of the server

#### Admin. E-mail Address

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Machine Setting". Specify the administrator address.

<b>P Maintenance - Mi</b> Eile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F		Explorer Help				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				<b>A</b>
		In Menu (Admin Mod				¢
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count		Machine Setting				
ROM Version		Device Name				
Import/Export		Device Location				
Status Notification	on Setting	Administrator Name				
Total Counter No	otification	Extension No.				
Setting		Admin. E-mail Addr	ess	admin@example.com		
Machine Setting						-
Online Assistance					OK Cancel	
Date/Time Settin	Ig					
Timer Setting						
Reset						
<ul> <li>External Memory Settings</li> </ul>	Function					
Header/Footer R	egistration					
License Settings						
		-				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Admin. E-mail Address	Specify the address for the administrator (up to 128 charac- ters). If the administrator address is not set, messages cannot be sent. The set address is displayed on the transmitter section of the message. Before messages are sent, the address can be changed to one other than the administrator address from the control panel.	Address for the adminis- trator

# Q

Detail

If "Change the From Address" is set to "Restrict", the From address cannot be changed when sending an E-Mail message. For details, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

### 1.9.3 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

#### E-mail TX (SMTP)

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Use SSL/TLS	To encrypt communication between this machine and the SMTP server using SSL/TTS, select "SMTP over SSL" or "Start TLS".	Whether the sever supports SSL or Start TLS
Port Number	Default setting: 25 If "Start TLS" is selected, specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Port No. (SSL)	Default setting: 465 If "SMTP over SSL" is selected, specify the port number to be used for SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

#### Action for Invalid Certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - "Action for Invalid Certificate".

Specify the following settings.

🗿 Security - Micros	oft Internet Exp	olorer				
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Processing Method				
User Registration	n	Action for Invalid Certi	ficate	Continue 🔽		
Account Track R	egistration					_
▼ SSL/TLS Setting					OK Cancel	]
SSL/TLS Sett	ing					
Action for Inv Certificate	alid					
Installation of CA	A Certificates					
Address Referen	ce Setting					
Permission of Ac Change	ldress					
Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					
		-				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

### 1.9.4 SMTP Authentication

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMTP Authentication	To perform SMTP authentication, select the "SMTP Authen- tication" check box.	Whether the sever re- quests SMTP
User ID	Specify the user ID for the SMTP authentication (up to 255 characters).	
Password	Specify the password for the SMTP authentication (up to 128 characters).	
Domain Name	Specify the domain name for the SMTP authentication (up to 255 characters). If the authentication method is Digest-MD5, the domain name must be specified.	Authentication method
Authentication Settings	Specify whether to synchronize with user authentication. When user authentication is performed, this item is dis- played.	Whether to synchronize the user authentication

# Q

#### Detail

A SMTP authentication method that is supported by the SMTP server and provided with the strongest encryption strength is automatically selected from Digest-MD5, CRAM-MD5, PLAIN, and LOGIN.

If there is just one domain (realm) to which the user belongs, it is notified from the SMTP server at the time of initial communication, and communication is automatically made using the domain name. Therefore, no domain name setting on this machine is not required. If there are two domains or more to which the user belongs, however, specify the domain name to which the user belongs.

#### 1.9.5 POP before SMTP

#### POP before SMTP

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
POP before SMTP	To perform POP before SMTP, select "ON".	Whether the sever requires POP before SMTP authentication
POP before SMTP Time	Specify the time period to access the SMTP server after logging in to the POP server.	Whether the POP server is different from the SMTP server

# Q

#### Detail

If the POP server is different from the SMTP server, the POP server informs the SMTP server that it has been logged in. Therefore, if the set POP before SMTP time is too short, messages may not be sent.



#### E-mail RX (POP)

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail RX (POP)".

Specify the following settings.

Network - Micros Eile Edit View F		elp				
	( c	Administrator			Logout	?
	٩	Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)			e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	Ş
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting		E-mail RX (POP)				
E-mail Setting		E-mail RX Setting	0	N 🕶		T
E-mail RX (PC	)P)	POP Server Address		Please check to ente	r host name.	L
🕨 E-mail TX (SM	ITP)		0.	0.0.0		
► S/MIME		Login Name				
I-Fax Advanc	ed Setting	Password				
LDAP Setting		APOP Authentication		FF 🗸		
► IPP Setting		MDN Response		N 🗸		7
FTP Setting		Connection Timeout Port Number	3			
SNMP Setting		Port Number	Ľ	10 (1-65535)		
SMB Setting		Port No.(SSL)	99	95 (1-65535)		
Web Service Set	tinas	Check for New Me		(1-05555)		
Bonjour Setting		Polling Interval	1!	5 min. (1-60)		
NetWare Setting						_
AppleTalk Setting				Г	OK Cancel	
Network Fax Set	-			L		
<ul> <li>WebDAV Setting</li> </ul>	-					
<ul> <li>OpenAPI Setting</li> </ul>						
TCP Socket Sett	ng					
SSDP Setting						
IEEE802.1X Authors Setting	entication					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail RX Setting	To perform POP before SMTP, select "ON".	
POP Server Address	Specify the POP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Login Name	Enter the login name for the POP server (up to 63 charac- ters).	
Password	Specify the password for logging in to the POP server (up to 15 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Port Number	Default setting: 110 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er

### 1.9.6 POP over SSL

#### E-mail RX (POP)

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail RX (POP)".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Use SSL/TLS	To encrypt communication between this machine and the POPS server using SSL, select the "Use SSL/TLS" check box.	Whether the sever sup- ports SSL
Port No. (SSL)	Default setting: 995 Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

#### Action for Invalid Certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - "Action for Invalid Certificate".

Specify the following settings.

Security - Micros						
Eile Edit ⊻iew F	F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				4
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Processing Method				
User Registration	n	Action for Invalid Certi	ficate	Continue 💙		
Account Track R	egistration					
SSL/TLS Setting	l de la companya de l				OK Cancel	
SSL/TLS Sett	ing					
Action for Inv Certificate	alid					
Installation of CA	A Certificates					
Address Referen	ce Setting					
Permission of Ac Change	idress					
Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	assword					
		_				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

#### 1.9.7 APOP Authentication

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail RX (POP)".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
APOP Authentication	To encrypt the login name and password when logging in to the POP server, select "ON".	Whether the sever re- quests APOP

# Q

#### Detail

When the POP server is logged in with APOP, the password is encrypted with Digest-MD5. If "ON" is specified for APOP authentication, you cannot log in to the server if the POP server does not support APOP.

# **1.10** Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)

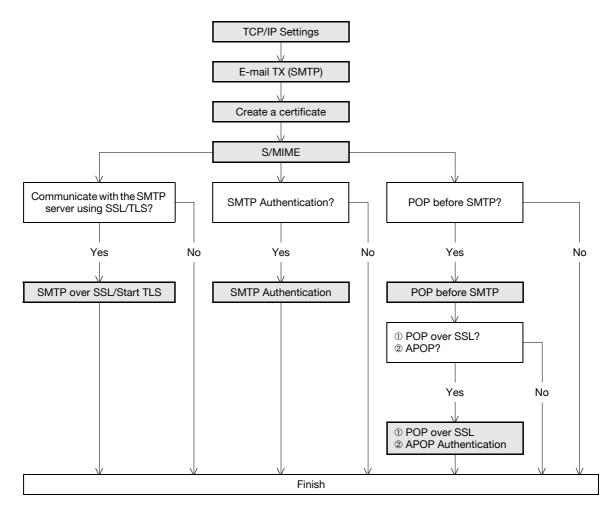
Specify settings for sending scan data by E-mail with the digital signature attached.

When scan data is sent by E-mail, it can be sent with the digital signature attached.

The certificate for this machine can be sent to the user by sending a message with the digital signature attached. Users can encrypt the message to send to this machine using the received certificate.

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 1-25.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.10.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.10.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

Specify settings for sending messages. For details, refer to "E-mail TX (SMTP)" on page 1-26.

#### 1.10.3 Create a certificate

Create a certificate for this machine.

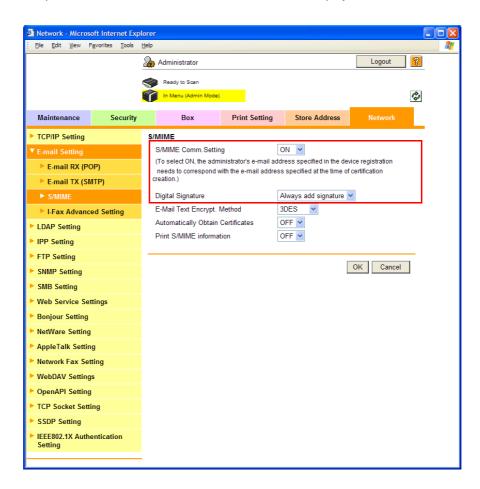
For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "S/MIME". Specify the following settings.

# Q Detail

#### When the optional hard disk is not installed, this menu is not displayed.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
Digital Signature	Select "Always add signature" or "Select when sending".	

#### 1.10.5 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 1-28.

#### 1.10.6 SMTP Authentication

Specify the settings for SMTP authentication. For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 1-29.

#### 1.10.7 POP before SMTP

Specify the settings for POP before SMTP. For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 1-29.

#### 1.10.8 POP over SSL

Specify the settings for POP over SSL. For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 1-31.

### 1.10.9 APOP Authentication

Specify the settings for APOP authentication. For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 1-32.

# **1.11** Sending scan data by E-mail (Public key-based encryption)

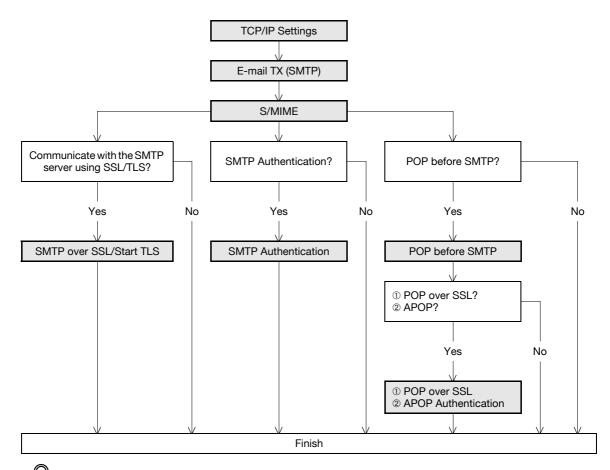
Specify settings for sending scan data as a message encrypted by public keys.

When scan data is sent by E-mail, the scan data can be sent by encrypting it using the user certificate registered in this machine in advance.

Sending encrypted messages prevents disclosure of information to third parties on the transmission path. In addition, if the message is encrypted by attaching the digital signature, authentication of this machine and message is possible. For details on attaching the digital signature to messages, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail (With the digital signature attached)" on page 1-33.

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 1-25.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# Q

#### Detail

Addresses for which no certificate is registered are not selectable. To encrypt messages for sending, register the user certificate in this machine in advance. For details, refer to "Registering a user certificate in this machine" on page 1-15.

#### 1.11.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.11.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

Specify settings for sending messages. For details, refer to "E-mail TX (SMTP)" on page 1-26.

501/421/361



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "S/MIME". Specify the following settings.

### Q Detail

#### When the optional hard disk is not installed, this menu is not displayed.

Network - Microsoft Internet Exp Elle Edit View Favorites Tools							
Elle Edit View Favorites Loois	Help						_
	Administrator				Logout	?	
	Ready to Scan						
	In Menu (Admin Mode	)				C.	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store	Address	Network		
TCP/IP Setting	S/MIME						
▼ E-mail Setting	S/MIME Comm.Setti	ng	ON 🛩				
E-mail RX (POP)	(To select ON, the add needs to correspond				-		
E-mail TX (SMTP)	creation.)						
► S/MIME	Digital Signature		Always add	l signature 💊	*		
I-Fax Advanced Setting	E-Mail Text Encrypt.		3DES	*			
LDAP Setting	Automatically Obtain		OFF 🛩				
IPP Setting	Print S/MIME informa	ation	OFF 🛩				
FTP Setting						_	
SNMP Setting				L	OK Cancel		
SMB Setting							
Web Service Settings							
Bonjour Setting							
NetWare Setting							
AppleTalk Setting							
Network Fax Setting							
WebDAV Settings							
OpenAPI Setting							
TCP Socket Setting							
SSDP Setting							
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting							
	-						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
E-Mail Text Encrypt. Method	Specify the encryption type for the body of E-mail messages.	

#### 1.11.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS. For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 1-28.

### 1.11.5 SMTP Authentication

Specify the settings for SMTP authentication. For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 1-29.

#### 1.11.6 POP before SMTP

Specify the settings for POP before SMTP. For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 1-29.

#### 1.11.7 POP over SSL

Specify the settings for POP over SSL. For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 1-31.

### 1.11.8 APOP Authentication

Specify the settings for APOP authentication. For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 1-32.

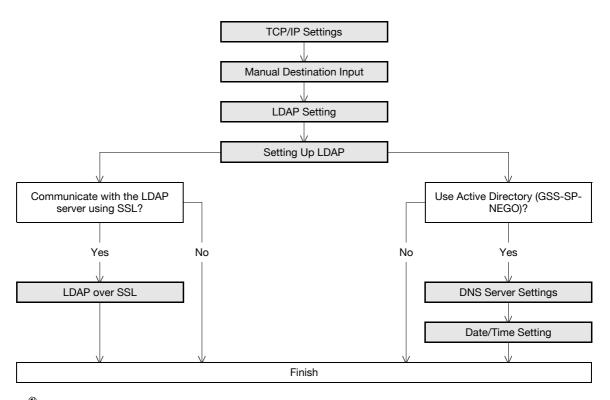
## 1.12 Searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server

Specify settings for searching for E-mail addresses from the LDAP server.

If the LDAP server is being for user management, the LDAP server can be accessed for searching for E-mail addresses. If this setting is specified, the [Address Search (LDAP)] key is displayed on the control panel. Using the LDAP server when specifying addresses saves trouble of registering addresses in this machine.

Also, to specify Active Directory as the LDAP server and select "GSS-SPNEGO" as the authentication method, be sure to specify a DNS server synchronized with Active Directory in the DNS Server Settings of this machine, and specify the date and time of this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



۵...

#### Note

For details on the LDAP search-based transmission method, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### 1.12.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.12.2 Manual Destination Input

On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Security Settings] - [4 Security Details] - [Manual Destination Input].

Specify the following settings.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Manual Destination Input	Select [Allow].	

#### 1.12.3 LDAP Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "LDAP Setting" - "LDAP Setting".

Specify the following setting.

∃ile <u>E</u> dit ⊻iew F	F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help					L trans t	
		2 <b>68</b> A	dministrator				Logout	2
			Ready to Scan					
			In Menu (Admin Mode)					Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Se	tting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting		LDA	P Setting					
E-mail Setting		Er	abling LDAP		ON	*		
LDAP Setting		_						
LDAP Setting							OK Cance	l -
Setting Up LC	AP							
IPP Setting								
FTP Setting								
SNMP Setting								
SMB Setting								
Web Service Se	ttings							
Bonjour Setting								
NetWare Setting								
AppleTalk Settin	ig							
Network Fax Set	tting							
WebDAV Setting	IS							
OpenAPI Setting	I							
TCP Socket Sett	ing							
SSDP Setting								
IEEE802.1X Auth Setting	entication							

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Enabling LDAP	Select "ON".	

#### 1.12.4 Setting Up LDAP

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "LDAP Setting" - "Setting Up LDAP" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

		Administrator			[	Logout	2
		-					
		Ready to Scan					d.
		In Menu (Admin Mode)			_		Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Ac	ldress		
TCP/IP Setting		Setting Up LDAP					
E-mail Setting		No.		1			
LDAP Setting		LDAP Server Name					
LDAP Setting		Server Address		Please che	eck to enter l	host name.	
Setting Up LDA	\P	Det Number		0.0.0.0			
IPP Setting		Port Number		389 (1-	65535)		
FTP Setting		Port Number (	(SSL)	636 (1-	65535)		
SNMP Setting		Search Base	/	U*	000001		
SMB Setting		Timeout		60 sec.	(5-300)		
Web Service Settings		Max.Search Results		100 (5-1000)			
Bonjour Setting		Authentication Method	Authentication Method a		~		
NetWare Setting		Login Name	ogin Name Anonymous				
AppleTalk Setting		Password					
Network Fax Setti		Domain Name					
WebDAV Settings	0	Select Server Authenti	Select Server Authentication Method		Set Value		
OpenAPI Setting		Use Referral		ON 🛩			
TCP Socket Settin	a	Initial Setting for Search	ch Details				
SSDP Setting		Name		OR	~		
IEEE802.1X Auther	ntication	E-mail		OR	*		
Setting		Fax Number Last Name		OR	*		
		First Name		OR	~		
		City		OR	*		
		Organization		OR	~		
		Organizational Un	it	OR	~		
		-					
						K Cance	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
LDAP Server Name	Specify the name of the LDAP server.	
Server Address	Specify the LDAP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 389 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Search Base	Specify the search starting point in a hierarchical structure placed on the LDAP server. Searches are performed through the directory at the starting point and subdirectories under the directory.	Search base
Timeout	Specify the maximum wait time for a search operation.	
Max. Search Results	Specify the maximum number of destinations to be displayed after a search.	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Authentication Method Select the authentication method used for loge LDAP server. If "anonymous" is selected, it is not necessary login name, password, and domain name. When "GSS-SPNEGO" is selected, the machin the server using the Kerberos authentication m Kerberos authentication method is supported rectory.		Authentication method for the server
Login Name	Specify the login name for logging in to the LDAP server (up to 255 characters).	
Password	Specify the password for logging in to the LDAP server (up to 128 characters).	
Domain Name	Specify the domain name for logging in to the LDAP server (up to 64 characters). If "GSS-SPNEGO" is selected, specify the domain name of Active Directory.	Authentication method Domain name
Select Server Authenti- cation Method	Specify the server authentication method. If "Set Value" is selected, the specified login name, pass- word, and domain name are used. If "Use User Authentication" is selected, the user name and password used for external server authentication are used. When "Dynamic Authentication" is selected, a user name and password is requested for address search (LDAP).	
Use Referral	To use the referral function, select "ON".	
Initial Setting for Search Details	Specify the conditions for performing a detailed LDAP search.	

# Q

#### Detail

Select the authentication method that is used by the LDAP server being used. For details, refer to the manual for the LDAP server being used.

#### 1.12.5 LDAP over SSL

#### Setting Up LDAP

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "LDAP Setting" - "Setting Up LDAP" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Enable SSL	To encrypt communication between this machine and the LDAP server using SSL, select the "Enable SSL" check box.	Whether the sever sup- ports SSL
Port Number (SSL)	Default setting: 636 Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

#### Action for Invalid Certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - "Action for Invalid Certificate".

Specify the following setting.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			4	Ş
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	Processing Method				
User Registration	Action for Invalid Certi	ficate	Continue 💙		
Account Track Registration					-
SSL/TLS Setting				OK Cancel	
SSL/TLS Setting					
Action for Invalid Certificate					
Installation of CA Certificates					
Address Reference Setting					
Permission of Address Change					
Auto Logout					
Administrator Password Setting					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

#### 1.12.6 DNS Server Settings

To specify Active Directory as the LDAP server and select "GSS-SPNEGO" as the authentication method, specify a DNS server synchronized with Active Directory in the DNS Server Settings of this machine.

For details on the DNS server, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.12.7 Date/Time Setting

When using Active Directory, specify the date and time on this machine.

For details, refer to "Specifying the date and time on this machine" on page 1-18.

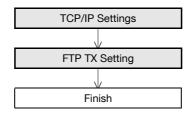


Specify settings for sending scan data to the FTP server.

In a network environment with an FTP server, scan data can be sent to a specified folder in the FTP server on the network. The data sent to the FTP server can be downloaded from a computer on the network. This function is suitable for transmitting large-sized data, such as high-resolution data.

If a proxy server is available in the network environment, an FTP server on the Internet can be accessed through the proxy server.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



۵..

#### Note

For details on registering FTP, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

For details on the FTP-based file transmission, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### 1.13.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.13.2 FTP TX Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "FTP Setting" - "FTP TX Settings".

Specify the following settings.

<u>Eile E</u> dit ⊻iew F	avorites Tools H	lelp				
	<u>(</u>	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
	¢	Ready to Scan				
	6	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting		FTP TX				
E-mail Setting		FTP TX		ON 🛩		
LDAP Setting		Proxy Server Address		Please check to ent	ter host name.	
IPP Setting				0.0.0.0		
FTP Setting		Proxy Server Port Num		21 (1-65535)		
FTP TX Settin	ıg	Connection Timeout		60 sec.(5-300)		
FTP Server S	etting	Port Number		21 (1-65535)		
SNMP Setting						
SMB Setting					OK Cancel	
Web Service Set	tings					
Bonjour Setting						
NetWare Setting						
AppleTalk Settin	g					
Network Fax Set	ting					
WebDAV Setting	s					
OpenAPI Setting						
TCP Socket Setti	ing					
SSDP Setting						
IEEE802.1X Authors Setting	entication					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
FTP TX	Select "ON".	
Proxy Server Address	To send data via a proxy server, specify the proxy server ad- dress. (Format: "***.***.***, Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Proxy Server Port Number	Default setting : 21 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Port Number	Default setting: 21 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er



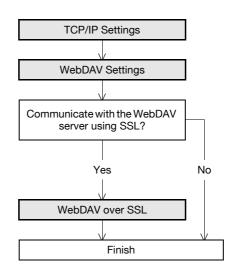
Specify settings for sending scan data to the WebDAV server.

In a network environment with a WebDAV server, scan data can be sent to a specified folder in the WebDAV server on the network. The data sent to the WebDAV server can be downloaded from a computer on the network.

WebDAV is based on extended specifications of HTTP, and therefore the security technology of HTTP can be used. These settings ensure safer file transmission by encrypting communication with the WebDAV server using SSL.

If a proxy server is available in the network environment, an WebDAV server on the Internet can be accessed through the proxy server.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# ۵...

#### Note

For details on registering WebDAV addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

For details on the WebDAV-based file transmission, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### Q Detail

Whether or not to send using SSL encryption is specified at address registration. For details, refer to "Address Book" on page 1-168.

#### 1.14.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.14.2 WebDAV Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "WebDAV Settings"-"WebDAV Client Settings".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew Fa	vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help								
		🖓 А	dministrator					Lo	ogout	?
			Ready to Scan							
			In Menu (Admin Mode)							Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print	Setting	Stor	e Address	Ne	twork	
TCP/IP Setting		Web	DAV Client Setti	ngs						
E-mail Setting		W	ebDAV TX Setting			ON 👻				
LDAP Setting		Pr	oxy Settings							
IPP Setting			Proxy Server Add	ress			e check to er	iter host na	ame.	
FTP Setting						0.0.0.0				
SNMP Setting			Proxy Server Port	Number		8080	(1-65535)		-	
SMB Setting			User Name						-	
Web Service Sett			Password							
	ings	Co	innection Timeout			60 s	sec.(5-300)			
Bonjour Setting		_								
NetWare Setting								ОК	Cancel	
AppleTalk Setting										
Network Fax Setti	ng									
WebDAV Settings										
WebDAV Clien	t Settings									
WebDAV Serve	er Settings									
OpenAPI Setting										
TCP Socket Settin	g									
SSDP Setting										
IEEE802.1X Authe Setting	ntication									

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
WebDAV TX Setting	Select "ON".	
Proxy Server Address	To send data via a proxy server, specify the proxy server ad- dress. (Format: "*********, ***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Proxy Server Port Number	Default setting : 8080 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
User Name	Specify the user name for the proxy server (up to 63 charac- ters).	
Password	Specify the password for the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

#### 1.14.3 WebDAV over SSL

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - "Action for Invalid Certificate".

Specify the following setting.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u>	vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help					-
		<b>2</b>	Administrator			Logout	?
			Ready to Scan				
			In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Pro	cessing Method				
User Registration		A	ction for Invalid Certif	icate	Continue 💙		
Account Track Reg	gistration	_					
SSL/TLS Setting						OK Cancel	
SSL/TLS Settin	g						
Action for Inva Certificate	lid						
Installation of CA	Certificates						
Address Reference	e Setting						
Permission of Add Change	ress						
Auto Logout							
Administrator Pass Setting	sword						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

#### 1.15 Sending an Internet fax

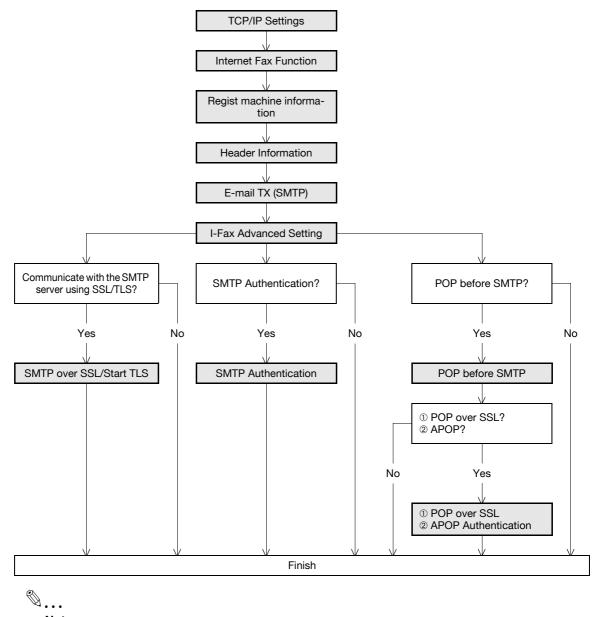
Specify settings for sending an Internet fax.

In order to use the Internet fax function, this machine is required to be equipped optionally with a hard disk and an image controller. And when using the Internet fax function, settings by a service engineer are required. For details, contact your service representative.

The Internet fax function sends and receives scanned originals as an attached file (TIFF format) via the intranet or Internet. This via-intranet or -Internet communication largely reduces the communication cost as compared with general fax messages.

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 1-25.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### Note

For details on registering Internet Fax addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

For details on the Internet fax operation, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### 1.15.1 **TCP/IP Settings**

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

501/421/361

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.15.2 Internet Fax Function

On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] - [Forward] - [3 Network Fax Setting] - [1 Network Fax Function Setting].

Specify the following setting.

```
۵...
```

Note

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 2-2.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Internet Fax Function	Select [ON].	

### 1.15.3 Regist machine information

#### **Device Mail Address**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

Specify the following setting.

Network - Microso						
<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit ⊻iew F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
		Administrator			Logout	2
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)			¢	ø
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting		E-mail TX (SMTP)				
▼ E-mail Setting		E-mail TX Setting				
E-mail RX (PC	)P)	Scan to E-mail		ON 🛩		
E-mail TX (SN		E-mail Notification		ON 👻		
► S/MIME		Total Counter Notif	fication	ON 👻		
	ad Cattlera	SMTP Server Address		Please check to ent	er host name.	
I-Fax Advance	eu setting			0.0.0.0		
LDAP Setting		Use SSL/TLS		OFF 🖌		
IPP Setting		Port Number		25 (1-65535)		
FTP Setting		Port No.(SSL)		465 (1-65535)		
SNMP Setting		Connection Timeout		60 🛩 sec.		
SMB Setting		Max Mail Size		No Limit 🐱		
Web Service Set	tings	Server Capacity		Mbyte(1-100)		
Bonjour Setting		Admin. E-mail Address	3	admin@example.com		
NetWare Setting		Device Mail Address Authentication Setting				
AppleTalk Settin	g	POP before SMTP		OFF V		
Network Fax Set	-	POP before SMTP		5 sec. (0-60)		
WebDAV Setting	-	SMTP Authen				
OpenAPI Setting		User ID				
TCP Socket Setti		Password				
		Domain Name				
SSDP Setting		Authentication	Setting	Set Value 🗸		
<ul> <li>IEEE802.1X Authors</li> <li>Setting</li> </ul>	entication	Binary Division	č			
		Divided Mail Size		Kbyte		
				(100-15000;Step100)		
					OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Device Mail Address	Specify the address for the device (up to 320 characters). If no address is specified here, the Internet fax cannot be sent.	Address for the device



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Machine Setting". Specify the following setting.

🗿 Maintenance - Mi								
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	Favorites <u>T</u> ools	Help						
		Administ	ator				Logout	?
		Ready to	Scan					
		In Menu	Admin Mode)					Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	В	ox	Print Setting	Sto	re Address	Networ	k
Meter Count		Machine S	etting					
ROM Version		Device Na	me					
Import/Export		Device Lo	ation					
Status Notification	on Setting	Administra	itor Name					
Total Counter No	otification	Extension	No.				]	
Setting		Admin. E-	mail Address		admin@e	xample.com		
Machine Setting								
Online Assistance							OK Can	icel
Date/Time Setting	ng							
Timer Setting								
Reset								
External Memory Settings	y Function							
Header/Footer R	legistration							
License Settings	1							
		-						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Device Name	Specify the device name (up to 255 characters). This name is contained in the subject of the Internet fax.	

#### 1.15.4 Header Information

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Header Information". Specify the following settings.

<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>Y</u> jew F <u>a</u> vorito	0	Administrat							
			or				Loc	jout	?
								<u> </u>	
		Ready to Sca							
		Ready to Prin	π						Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	ĸ	Print Setting	3	Store Address	Net	twork	
► Address Book	Se	nder Fax	No.						
► Group	1	Sender Fax	No.						
► Program									_
► Temporary One-Tou	ch	List o. Default	Sender N	lame			Edit	Delete	
► Subject	1	C	Condor I				Edit	Delete	
► Text	2	•					Edit	Delete	
▶ Prefix/Suffix	3	•					Edit	Delete	
Header Information	4						Edit	Delete	
	5	0					Edit	Delete	
	6	0					Edit	Delete	
	7	0					Edit	Delete	
	8	•					Edit	Delete	
	9	•					Edit	Delete	
	11	0					Edit	Delete	
	1	1 🔍					Edit	Delete	
	1:	2 0					Edit	Delete	
	1:	3 0					Edit	Delete	
	14	4					Edit	Delete	
	15	5 0					Edit	Delete	
	11	6 0					Edit	Delete	
	1	7 🔍					Edit	Delete	
	11	в 🦷					Edit	Delete	
	1	9 0					Edit	Delete	
	21	0					Edit	Delete	
	_					г			_
							ОК	Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Sender Fax No.	Register the sender fax number. Normally enter the fax number of this machine.	
Default	If no sender name is specified when sending a fax, the send- er name with a check mark is used.	
Sender Name	Displays registered sender names.	
[Edit]	Registers or edits the sender name.	
[Delete]	Deletes the registered sender name.	

#### Registration

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
Sender Name	Enter the sender name (up to 30 characters).	

#### 1.15.5 E-mail TX (SMTP)

Specify settings for sending messages. For details, refer to "E-mail TX (SMTP)" on page 1-26.

#### 1.15.6 I-Fax Advanced Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "I-FAX Advanced Setting".

Specify the following settings.

# Q Detail

If the Internet fax function is disabled, this menu item is not displayed.

Network - Microsoft Internet Exp Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	I-Fax Advanced Settin	Ig			
▼ E-mail Setting	MDN Request	ON	*		
E-mail RX (POP)	DSN Request	OFF			
E-mail TX (SMTP)	MDN Response	ON	*		
► S/MIME	MDN/DSN Respon	se Observation			
▶ I-Fax Advanced Setting		24	Hour (1-99)		
LDAP Setting	Maximum Resolution	Ultr	a Fine 🔽		
IPP Setting					
FTP Setting				OK Cancel	1
SNMP Setting					-
SMB Setting					
Web Service Settings					
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
Network Fax Setting					
WebDAV Settings					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setting					
SSDP Setting					
<ul> <li>IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting</li> </ul>					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
MDN Request	Select "ON". If the fax is printed at the receiving side, MDN response can be received.	
DSN Request	Select "ON". If the fax reaches the mail server at the receiving side, DSN response can be received. If MDN is specified to "ON", DSN is not required.	
MDN/DSN Response Observation Time	Specify the waiting time for MDN or DSN response. MDN or DSN response of which set waiting time was up is ignored.	
Maximum Resolution	Specify the maximum resolution.	

#### 1.15.7 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 1-28.

#### 1.15.8 SMTP Authentication

Specify the settings for SMTP authentication. For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 1-29.

#### 1.15.9 POP before SMTP

Specify the settings for POP before SMTP. For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 1-29.

#### 1.15.10 POP over SSL

Specify the settings for POP over SSL. For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 1-31.

#### 1.15.11 APOP Authentication

Specify the settings for APOP authentication. For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 1-32.

## 1.16 Receiving Internet faxes

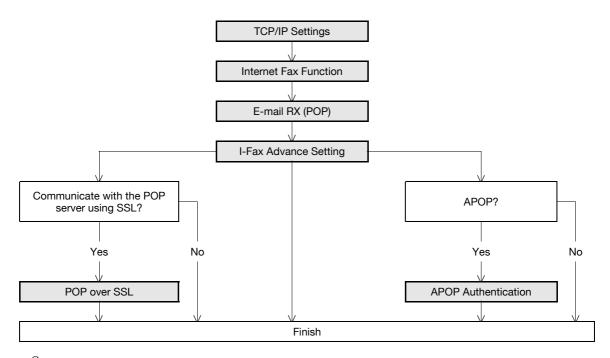
Specify settings for receiving Internet faxes.

In order to use the Internet fax function, this machine is required to be equipped optionally with a hard disk and an image controller. And when using the Internet fax function, settings by a service engineer are required. For details, contact your service representative.

The Internet fax function sends and receives scanned originals as an attached file (TIFF format) via the intranet (internal company networks) or Internet. This via-intranet or -Internet communication largely reduces the communication cost as compared with general fax messages.

Performing APOP authentication when receiving an Internet fax ensures safer communication.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# Ø...

Note

For details on registering Internet Fax addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

For details on the Internet fax operation, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### 1.16.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.16.2 Internet Fax Function

Enable the Internet fax function of this machine.

For details, refer to "Internet Fax Function" on page 1-50.

#### 1.16.3 E-mail RX (POP)

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail RX (POP)".

Specify the following settings.

	Administrator			Logout
	Ready to Scan			
1	In Menu (Admin Mode)			Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	E-mail RX (POP)			
E-mail Setting	E-mail RX Setting		ON 💌	
E-mail RX (POP)	POP Server Address	-	Please check to ente	r host name.
E-mail TX (SMTP)			0.0.0.0	
► S/MIME	Login Name	l		
I-Fax Advanced Setting	Password			
LDAP Setting	APOP Authentication	-	OFF 🕶	
IPP Setting	MDN Response		ON 🗸	
FTP Setting	Connection Timeout		30 vsec.	
SNMP Setting	Port Number	l	110 (1-65535)	
SMB Setting	Port No.(SSL)	Г	995 (1-65535)	
Web Service Settings	Check for New Mes	L	(1-05555)	
-	Polling Interval	-	15 min. (1-60)	
Bonjour Setting	, ,	L	(100)	
NetWare Setting			Г	OK Cancel
AppleTalk Setting			L	UN Calicer
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail RX Setting	Select "ON".	
POP Server Address	Specify the POP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Login Name	Enter the login name for the POP server (up to 63 charac- ters).	
Password	Type in the login password for the POP server (up to 15 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Port Number	Default setting: 110 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Check for New Messag- es	To automatically receive messages, select the "Check for New Messages" check box.	
Polling Interval	To automatically receive messages, specify an interval for receive messages automatically.	

# Q

#### Detail

By touching [Receive I-Fax] on the Fax/Scan mode screen of the control panel, E-mail messages can be manually received.

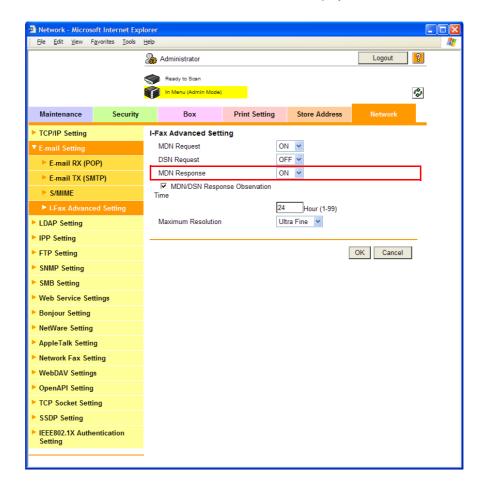
#### 1.16.4 I-Fax Advance Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "I-FAX Advanced Setting".

Specify the following setting.

# Q Detail

If the Internet fax function is disabled, this menu item is not displayed.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
MDN Response	To reply to the message disposition notification request from the sender, select "ON".	

#### 1.16.5 POP over SSL

Specify the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 1-31.

#### 1.16.6 APOP Authentication

Specify the settings for APOP authentication. For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 1-32.

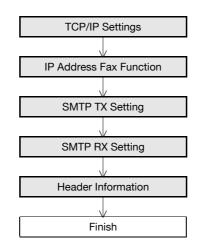


Specify settings for sending and receiving IP address faxes.

To use the IP address fax function, this machine must be equipped with an optional fax kit, a hard disk and an image controller. In order to use the IP address fax function, setting by a service engineer is required. For details, contact your service representative.

The IP address fax enables communication on the IP network. Specify the host name or IP address for the destination to send a Fax. SMTP protocol is used for sending and receiving faxes. Because IP address faxes are sent and received via the SMTP server function of this machine, no SMTP server is required.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# ®...

#### Note

For details on registering IP address fax addresses, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

For details on the IP address fax operation, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

#### 1.17.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.17.2 IP Address Fax Function

On the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] - [Forward] - [3 Network Fax Setting] - [1 Network Fax Function Setting].

Specify the following setting.

#### Note

For details on displaying the Network Setting screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 2-2.

	Select item and enter setting.		
Bookmark	Administrator Settings > Network F Network Fax Function Settings	ax Settings >	
Utility	IP Address Fax Function	ON	Job Setting
•	SIP-Fax Function	OFF	ON
Administrator Settings	Internet Fax Function	ON	OFF
Network Settings			
Network Fax Settings			
	01/17/2008 17:28 👹 Menory 90%		ОК

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IP Address Fax Function	Select [ON].	

# 1.17.3 SMTP TX Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Network Fax Setting" - "SMTP TX Setting".

Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Expl File Edit View Favorites Tools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	SMTP TX Setting				
E-mail Setting	Port Number	25	(1-65535)		
LDAP Setting	Connection Timeout	60	sec. (30-300)		
IPP Setting					_
FTP Setting			[	OK Cancel	
SNMP Setting					
SMB Setting					
Web Service Settings					
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
Network Fax Setting					
SMTP TX Setting					
SMTP RX Setting					
WebDAV Settings					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setting					
SSDP Setting					
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number to be used
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

# 1.17.4 SMTP RX Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Network Fax Setting" - "SMTP RX Setting".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew Fi	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help						
		æ /	Administrator				Logout	?
			Ready to Scan					
			In Menu (Admin Mode)					Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Sett	ing	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting		SM	TP RX Setting					
E-mail Setting		s	MTP RX		ON	~		
LDAP Setting		P	ort Number		25	(1-65535)		
IPP Setting		С	onnection Timeout		300	sec. (5-1000)		
FTP Setting								
SNMP Setting							OK Cance	1
SMB Setting								
Web Service Set	tings							
Bonjour Setting								
NetWare Setting								
AppleTalk Setting	)							
Network Fax Sett	ing							
SMTP TX Sett	ing							
SMTP RX Sett	ing							
WebDAV Setting	;							
OpenAPI Setting								
TCP Socket Setti	ng							
SSDP Setting								
IEEE802.1X Authe Setting	ntication							

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMTP RX	Select "ON".	
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number to be used
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

## 1.17.5 Header Information

Register sender information for fax transmissions.

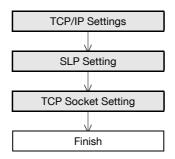
For details, refer to "Header Information" on page 1-53.

# 1.18 Importing images in the box using the TWAIN scan

A setting is made in order to import the images saved in the box of this machine by using the HDD TWAIN driver.

Using the HDD TWAIN driver allows you to import for process the image data saved in the box into the application on the computer.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# ۵.

Note

For details on installing the HDD TWAIN driver, refer to the HDD TWAIN driver manual on the Driver CD-ROM.

# 1.18.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.18.2 SLP Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "TCP/IP Setting".

Specify the following setting.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SLP	To search for this machine using TWAIN, select "Enable".	

# 1.18.3 TCP Socket Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP Socket Setting". Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Exp Ele Edit View Favorites Tools	lorer Help			
Fie For Ten (Fronce Tons	Administrator			Logout ?
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			C.
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	TCP Socket Setting			
E-mail Setting	(Turn the main switch OF	F, and then ON , whe	en changing TCP Socket.)	
LDAP Setting	Port Number		59158 (1-65535)	
IPP Setting	Use SSL/TLS		(1-05555)	
FTP Setting	Port No.(SSL)		59159 (1-65535)	
SNMP Setting	TCP Socket(ASCI	I Mode)		
SMB Setting	Port No.(ASCII Mo	ode)	59160 (1-65535)	
Web Service Settings				
Bonjour Setting				OK Cancel
NetWare Setting			_	
AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
<ul> <li>IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting</li> </ul>				
	-			

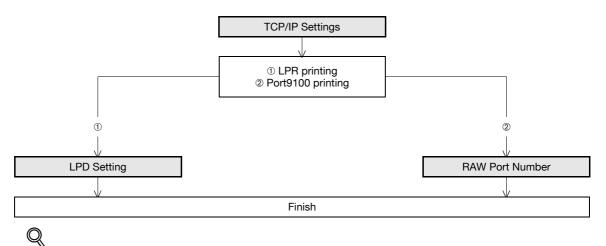
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP Socket	Select the "TCP Socket" check box.	
Port Number	Default setting : 59158 Specify the port number.	

Specify settings for printing by using LPR or Port9100.

LPR printing is performed via the network using the LPR protocol. LPR printing is used in the UNIX-like OS.

Port9100 printing is performed via the network by directly specifying the RAW port (Port9100) of this machine connected to the TCP/IP network as a printer of the print destination.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### ≫ Detail

To print data using LPR or Port9100, settings for the printer driver must be specified after these settings. For details, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations].

# 1.19.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

## 1.19.2 LPD Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "TCP/IP Setting".

Specify the following setting.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
LPD	Select "Enable".	

# 1.19.3 RAW Port Number

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "TCP/IP Setting".

Specify the following setting.

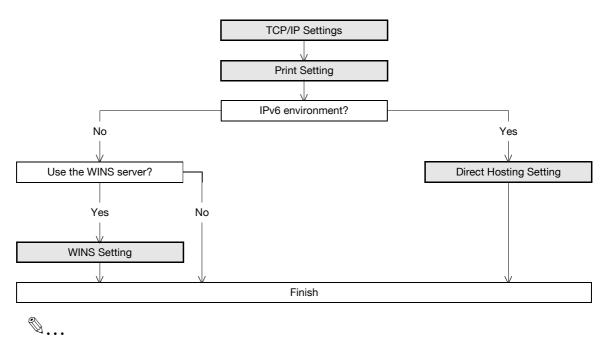
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
RAW Port Number	Select the check box for the port to be used, and then spec- ify the RAW port number. (Default setting : 9100/9112/9113/9114/9115/9116)	

Specify settings for printing by using SMB.

The printer is sharable on the Windows network by using the SMB protocol. SMB printing is performed by directly specifying this machine on the Windows network from the computer.

This machine supports the Direct Hosting service. When the SMB printing is made in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting is required to be enabled.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# Note

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)].

#### 1.20.1 **TCP/IP Settings**

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.20.2 Print Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "SMB Setting" - "Print Setting".

Specify the following settings.

	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	Print Setting				
E-mail Setting	SMB Print	10	N 💌		
LDAP Setting	NetBIOS Name	MF	FP270030		
IPP Setting	Print Service Name	ab	с		
FTP Setting	Workgroup	W	ORKGROUP		
SNMP Setting					_
SMB Setting				OK Cancel	
► WINS Setting					
Client Setting					
Print Setting					
Direct Hosting Setting					
Web Service Settings					
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
Network Fax Setting					
WebDAV Settings					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setting					
SSDP Setting					
EEE802.1X Authentication Setting					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SMB Print	Select "ON".	
NetBIOS Name	Specify the NetBIOS name with uppercase letters (up to 15 characters).	
Print Service Name	Specify the print service name with uppercase letters (up to 12 characters).	
Workgroup	Specify the workgroup name with uppercase letters (up to 15 characters).	Workgroup to which you belong

# 1.20.3 WINS Setting

To perform SMB print via the router, specify settings for the WINS server.

For details, refer to "WINS Setting" on page 1-24.

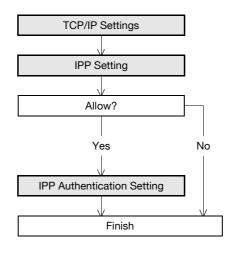
# 1.20.4 Direct Hosting Setting

When the SMB printing is made in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting is required to be enabled. For details, refer to "Direct Hosting Setting" on page 1-23.

Specify settings for printing using IPP.

IPP printing is performed via the network using the IPP protocol. Using the HTTP protocol can transfer print data to the printer on the network, and therefore also enabling output to a remote printer via the Internet.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



۵...

Note

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)].

# 1.21.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.21.2 IPP Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "IPP Setting". Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Expl Ele Edit View Favorites Tools t	orer Help				(	
, 	Administrator			Logout	?	
	Ready to Scan					
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
TCP/IP Setting	IPP Setting					
E-mail Setting	IPP Setting		ON 🛩			
LDAP Setting	Accept IPP job		ON 🛩			
► IPP Setting	Printer Name					
FTP Setting	Printer Location					
SNMP Setting	Printer Information					
SMB Setting	Printer URI http://10.11.32.53	Vinn				
Web Service Settings		).EDDTRG.local/ipp				
Bonjour Setting		ipp://10.11.32.53/ipp				
NetWare Setting	ipp://MFP270030.EDDTRG.local/ipp https://10.11.32.53/ipp					
AppleTalk Setting	https://MFP270030.EDDTRG.local/ipp					
Network Fax Setting	Support Operation					
WebDAV Settings	Valid Job					
<ul> <li>OpenAPI Setting</li> </ul>	Cancel Job					
TCP Socket Setting	Open Job Att	ributes				
<ul> <li>SSDP Setting</li> </ul>	Open Job					
IEEE802.1X Authentication	Open Printer					
Setting	IPP Authenticatio					
	Authentication Me User Name	ethod	requesting-user-name			
	Password		user			
			IPP			
	realm		אאון			
				<u>av</u> a		
			L	OK Cancel		

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPP Setting	Select "ON".	
Accept IPP job	Select "ON".	
Printer Name	Specify the printer name (up to 127 characters).	
Printer Location	Specify the printer location (up to 127 characters).	
Printer Information	Specify the printer information (up to 127 characters).	
Printer URI	Displays the URI of the printer that can use IPP when print- ing.	
Support Operation	Specify the print operations supported by IPP.	



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "IPP Setting". Specify the following settings.

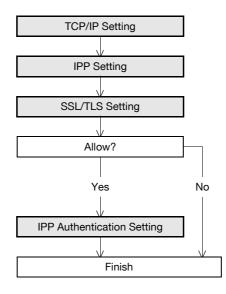
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPP Authentication Set- ting	To perform IPP printing, select the "IPP Authentication Set- ting" check box.	
Authentication Method	Specify the authentication method.	
User Name	Specify the user name (up to 20 characters).	
Password	Enter the password (up to 20 characters).	
realm	Specify realm (up to 127 characters). If the authentication method is digest, realm must be speci- fied.	Authentication method

# 1.22 Printing (IPPS)

Specify settings for printing using IPPS.

When performing IPP printing with this machine, communication between the computer and this machine is encrypted using SSL. Encrypting communication using SSL improves security when printing using IPP.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# ۵.

#### Note

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)].

# Q

Detail

When specifying to use IPP printing in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008, enter "https://[Host Name].[Domain Name]/ipp". For [Host Name] and [Domain Name], specify the names set by the DNS host name and the DNS default domain name of the TCP/IP setting. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2. Also, it is necessary that the computer must be able to resolve the names for this machine using DNS. Register this machine to the DNS server in advance, and specify settings for DNS at the computer side.

When the certificate of this machine is not published by certificate authority, register the certificate of this machine to "Trusted Root Certification Authorities" for the Local computer in advance.

# 1.22.1 TCP/IP Setting

Make settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

When settings are made on Windows Vista/7/Server 2008 for the IPPS printing, set correctly the DNS host name and the DNS default domain name registered on the DNS server for the TCP/IP setting before creating a certificate. If the settings are not made correctly, the IPPS connection cannot be made.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.22.2 IPP Setting

Specify settings for printing by using IPP.

For details, refer to "IPP Setting" on page 1-68.

#### 1.22.3 SSL/TLS Setting

Encrypt communication with this machine using SSL.

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

### 1.22.4 IPP Authentication Setting

Specify settings when authentication is used when printing using IPP. For details, refer to "IPP Authentication Setting" on page 1-69.

# 1.23 Printing (Bonjour)

Specify settings for printing by connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using Bonjour. When connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using Bonjour, the Bonjour settings must be specified.

۵...

Note

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)].

### **Bonjour Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Bonjour Setting". Specify the following settings.

	Administrator			Logout
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			0
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	Bonjour Setting			
E-mail Setting	Bonjour	ON	*	
LDAP Setting	Bonjour Name	XXX	XXXXXX	
IPP Setting				
FTP Setting				OK Cancel
SNMP Setting				
SMB Setting				
Web Service Settings				
· Bonjour Setting				
NetWare Setting				
AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Bonjour	Select "ON".	
Bonjour Name	Specify the Bonjour name that appears as the name of the connected device (up to 63 characters).	

# 1.24 Printing (AppleTalk)

Specify settings for printing by connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using AppleTalk. When connecting this machine to a Macintosh computer using AppleTalk, the AppleTalk settings must be specified.

۵...

Note

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)].

### AppleTalk Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "AppleTalk Setting".

Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Expl Eile Edit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools !	<u>H</u> elp			
	Administrator			Logout ?
1	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	AppleTalk Setting			
E-mail Setting	* is reflected after reset.			
LDAP Setting	AppleTalk	OI	FF 🔽	
IPP Setting	Printer Name*	MF	P270030	
FTP Setting	Zone Name*	*		
SNMP Setting	Current Zone	*		
SMB Setting				
Web Service Settings				OK Cancel
Bonjour Setting				
NetWare Setting				
• AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
AppleTalk	Select "ON".	
Printer Name*	Specify the printer name that appears on the selector (up to 31 characters).	
Zone Name*	Specify the zone name to which this machine belongs (up to 31 characters).	
Current Zone	Displays the current zone name.	

# 1.25 Printing (NetWare)

Specify settings for printing in a NetWare environment. Before printing in the NetWare environment, settings for using this machine in the NetWare environment must be specified.

۵...

Note

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)].

# 1.25.1 NetWare Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "NetWare Setting" - "NetWare Setting".

Image: set ing       Imag	Network - Microsoft Internet Exp     Edit View Favorites Tools	lorer Help		
Naintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network   > CCP/IP Setting • Is reflected after reset. • Is reflected after reset. • IS Setting • 'Is reflected after reset.   > LDAP Setting • IPX Setting* ON ♥   • PTP Setting ·IPX Setting* ON ♥   • SNMP Setting ·IPX Setting* ON ♥   • SNMP Setting ·IPX Setting* ON ♥   • SMB Setting ·IPX Setting* OF F ♥   • Songer Setting ·Print Server Name* ·MFP270030   • NetWare Setting ·Bindery/NDS Setting* ·NDS   • NetWare Status ·NDS ·NDS   • NopolaPI Setting ·NDS (IP P270030)   • NopolaPI Setting ·NDS   • NopolaPI Setting ·NDS   • StDP Setting ·Print Server Name*   • StDP Setting ·Print Server Name*   • StDP Setting ·Print Server Name*   • Departing Setting ·Print Server Name*   • StDP Setting ·Print Server Name*   • StDP Setting ·Print Server Name*   • StDP Setting ·Printer Number*   • StDP Setting ·Printer Number*   <	,	Administrator		
Naintenance Security Box Print Setting Store Address Network <ul> <li>TCP/IP Setting</li> <li>E-mail Setting</li> <li>IDDAP Setting</li> <li>IPX Setting*</li> <li>NetWare Setting</li> <li>NDS</li> <li>NDS</li> <li>NDS Context Name*</li> <li>NDS</li> <li>NDS Context Name*</li> <li>NDS Tree Name*</li> <li>NDS Tree Name*</li> <li>NDS Tree Name*</li> <li>IPF270030</li> <li>IPT Setting</li> <li>IPT Setting</li></ul>		Ready to Scan		
> TCP/IP Setting NetWare Setting   > Email Setting * is reflected after reset.   > LDAP Setting IPX Setting*   > IPP Setting IPX Setting*   > TTP Setting IPX Setting*   > SNMP Setting IPX Mode*   > SNMP Setting OFF   > SMB Setting Print Server Name*   > Web Service Setting Print Server Password*   > NetWare Setting Bindery   > NetWare Setting Bindery   > NetWare Satting NDS   > NetWare Setting NDS   > NetWork Fax Setting NDS   > Network Fax Setting NDS   > VebDAV Settings Print Server Name*   > NpoleTalk Setting NDS   > VebDAV Settings Print Server Name*   > NpoleTalk Setting Print Server Name*   > Stoling Print Server Name*   > Stolp Setting Printer Number*   > SSDP Setting Printer Number*   > EEE802.1X Authentication Setting Print Server		In Menu (Admin Mode)		C.
▶ E-mail Setting       ** Is reflected after reset.         ▶ LDAP Setting       IPX Setting*       ON ♥         > IPP Setting       (Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)         ▶ FTP Setting       Ethernet Frame Type*       Auto Detect ♥         > SNMP Setting       NetWare Print Mode*       OFF ♥         > SMB Setting       Print Server Name*       MFP270030         > Web Service Settings       Print Server Password*	Maintenance Security	Box Print Setting	Store Address	Network
▶ Lmail Setting       IPX Setting*       ON ♥         ▶ LDAP Setting       IPX Setting*       ON ♥         ▶ IPP Setting       (Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)         ▶ FTP Setting       Ethernet Frame Type*       Auto Detect ♥         > SNMP Setting       NetWare Print Mode*       OFF ♥         > SMB Setting       Print Server Name*       MFP270030         > Web Service Settings       Print Server Password*	► TCP/IP Setting	NetWare Setting		
IPP Setting (Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)   FTP Setting Ethernet Frame Type*   SNMP Setting NetWare Print Mode*   SSMB Setting Print Server Name*   MEP270030 Print Server Password*   Bonjour Setting Print Server Password*   NetWare Setting Bindery/NDS Setting*   NetWare Setting Bindery/NDS Setting*   NetWare Setting Bindery   NetWare Setting NDS   NetWare Setting NDS   NetWare Setting NDS   NopenAPI Setting Print Server Name*   OpenAPI Setting Print Server Name*   Print Server Name* MEP270030   VebDAV Settings Nprinter/Rprinter   PopenAPI Setting Print Server Name*   MSP270030 Print Server Name*   User Authentication Setting ON P	E-mail Setting	* is reflected after reset.		
FTP Setting   SNMP Setting   SNMP Setting   SMB Setting   Print Server Name*   Print Server Password*   Polling Interval*   1   sec.(1-65535)   Bindery/NDS Setting*   NetWare Setting   Nos   NDS   NDS Context Name*   NDS Tree Name*   Nprinter/Rprinter   OpenAPI Setting   Print Server Name*   Print Server Name*   ICP Socket Setting   Print Server Name*   ICE Socket Setting   Print Server Name*   ICE Setting   Print Server Name*   ICE Setting   Printer Number*   ICE Setting <tr< th=""><th>LDAP Setting</th><th>IPX Setting*</th><th>ON 🛩</th><th></th></tr<>	LDAP Setting	IPX Setting*	ON 🛩	
> SIMP Setting       NetWare Print Mode*       OFF         > SMB Setting       Pint Server Name*       MFP270030         > Web Service Settings       Print Server Password*	IPP Setting	(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON ,	when changing settings.)	
> SMMP Setting   > SMB Setting   > SMB Setting   > Web Service Settings   > Bonjour Setting   > NetWare Setting   > Nops   > Network Fax Setting   > Npointer/Rprinter   > OpenAPI Setting   > TCP Socket Setting   > SSDP Setting   User Authentication Setting	FTP Setting	Ethernet Frame Type*	Auto Detect 🔽	
> SMB Setting       Print Server Name*       MFP270030         > Web Service Settings       Print Server Password*	SNMP Setting		OFF 💙	
> Web Service Settings       Print Server Password*         > Bonjour Setting       Polling Interval*         > NetWare Setting       Bindery/NDS Setting*         > NetWare Setting       Bindery         > NetWare Setting       Bindery         > NetWare Setting       Bindery         > NetWare Setting       Bindery         > NetWare Setting       NDS         > NetWare Setting       NDS         > NetWare Setting       NDS         > Network Fax Setting       NDS Context Name*         > Nbetwork Fax Setting       NDS Tree Name*         > NDS Vsettings       Nprinter/Rprinter         > OpenAPI Setting       Print Server Name*         > SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting         > IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting       ON ♥	SMB Setting		MED 270020	
▶ Bonjour Setting       Polling Interval*       1 sec.(1-65535)         ▶ NetWare Setting       Bindery/NDS Setting*       NDS         ▶ NetWare Setting       Bindery       Image: Setting interval*       Image: Setting interval*         ▶ NetWare Setting       File Server Name*       Image: Setting interval*       Image: Setting interval*         ▶ NetWare Setting       NDS       NDS       Image: Setting interval*       Image: Setting interval*         ▶ Network Fax Setting       NDS Context Name*       Image: Setting interval*       Image: Setting interval*         ▶ WebDAV Settings       Nprinter/Rprinter       Image: Setting interval*       Image: Setting interval*         ▶ OpenAPI Setting       Print Server Name*       Image: Setting interval*       Image: Setting interval*         ▶ SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting       On method interval*       Image: Setting interval*         ▶ IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting       On method interval*       Image: Setting interval*       Image: Setting interval*	Web Service Settings		WII F 270030	
▼ NetWare Setting       Bindery/NDS Setting*       NDS         ▶ NetWare Status       Bindery         ▶ NetWare Status       File Server Name*         ▶ NppleTalk Setting       NDS         ▶ Network Fax Setting       NDS Context Name*         ▶ Network Fax Setting       NDS Tree Name*         ▶ OpenAPI Setting       Print Server Name*         ▶ CP Socket Setting       Printer Number*         ▶ SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting	Bonjour Setting		1	
▶ NetWare Setting       Bindery         ▶ NetWare Status       File Server Name*         ▶ AppleTalk Setting       NDS         ▶ Network Fax Setting       NDS Context Name*         ▶ Network Fax Setting       NDS Tree Name*         ▶ OpenAPI Setting       Printe Server Name*         ▶ TCP Socket Setting       Printer Number*         ▶ SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting	▼ NetWare Setting	, and the second s		
Image: NetWare Status       File Server Name*         AppleTalk Setting       NDS         Network Fax Setting       NDS Context Name*         NDS Tree Name*       NDS Tree Name*         OpenAPI Setting       Printer/Rprinter         Print Server Name*       Image: NPP270030         TCP Socket Setting       Printer Number*         SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting         IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting       ON		· ·	NDO	
NDS         Network Fax Setting       NDS Context Name*         NDS Tree Name*       NDS Tree Name*         OpenAPI Setting       Printer/Rprinter         Print Server Name*       MFP270030         TCP Socket Setting       Printer Number*         SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting		File Server Name*		
Network Fax Setting       NDS Context Name*         NDS Tree Name*       NDS Tree Name*         OpenAPI Setting       Print Server Name*         TCP Socket Setting       Printer Number*         SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting         IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting       ON		NDS		
WebDAV Settings       Nprinter/Rprinter         OpenAPI Setting       Print Server Name*         TCP Socket Setting       Printer Number*         SSDP Setting       User Authentication Setting         IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting       ON		NDS Context Name*		
OpenAPI Setting     Print Server Name*     MFP270030       > TCP Socket Setting     Printer Number*     255       > SSDP Setting     User Authentication Setting     ON				
> TCP Socket Setting     Printer Number*     255     (0-255,255:Auto)       > SSDP Setting     User Authentication Setting     ON     Image: Content of the setting of the set ing of t	-			
SSDP Setting     User Authentication Setting     ON ▼				
IEEE802.1X Authentication     Setting	-		(* ****,*****	uto)
Setting	SSDP Setting	User Authentication Setting	ON 🚩	
				OK Cancel
				Gancer

Settings are different depending on the environment used. Specify the settings according to the following procedures.

#### For Remote Printer mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation

- ✔ Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.
- 1 From a client computer, log in to NetWare with the Administrator permission as Bindery.
- 2 Start up Pconsole.
- From the "Available Options" list, select "Quick Setup", and then press the [Enter] key.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", and "Print Queue Name" fields, select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field, and then save the specified settings.
- 5 Press the [Esc] key to quit Pconsole.
- 6 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.

Next, specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "NPrinter/Rprinter".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as Nprint- er/Rprinter (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Printer Number*	Enter the Nprinter/Rprinter printer number.	

#### For the print server mode with NetWare 4.x bindery emulation

- ✓ Before using bindery emulation, check that bindery emulation is compatible with the NetWare server.
- ✔ To use the printer server mode, the IPX protocol must be loaded on the NetWare server.
- 1 From a client computer, log in to NetWare with the Administrator permission as Bindery.
- 2 Start up Pconsole.
- **3** From the "Available Options" list, select "Quick Setup", and then press the [Enter] key.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", and "Print Queue Name" fields, select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field, and then save the specified settings.
- 5 Press the [Esc] key to quit Pconsole.

Next, specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "PServer".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as Pserver (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Print Server Password*	If necessary, specify the password for the printer server (up to 63 characters).	
Polling Interval*	Specify an interval to make queries for jobs.	
Bindery/NDS Setting	Select "NDS/Bindery".	
File Server Name	Specify the priority file server name for Bindery mode (up to 47 characters).	

#### For NetWare 4.x Remote Printer mode (NDS)

- 1 Log in to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service, and then click "Print Services Quick Setup" on the "Tools" menu.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", "Print Queue Name", and "Print Queue Volume" fields, select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field, and then save the specified settings.
- 5 Use the NetWare server console to load PSERVER.NLM.

Next, specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "NPrinter/Rprinter".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as Nprint- er/Rprinter (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Printer Number*	Enter the Nprinter/Rprinter printer number.	

#### For NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server mode (NDS)

- ✔ To use the printer server mode, the IPX protocol must be loaded on the NetWare server.
- 1 Log in to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Select either the organization or organizational unit container that offers the print service, and then click "Print Services Quick Setup (non-NDPS)" on the "Tools" menu.
- 4 Enter the appropriate names in the "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", "Print Queue Name", and "Print Queue Volume" fields, select "Other/Unknown" from the "Printer type" field, and then click [Create].

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting*	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type*	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode*	Select "PServer".	
Print Server Name*	Specify the printer server name to allow it to serve as PServ- er (up to 63 characters).	Print server name regis- tered in step 4
Print Server Password*	If necessary, specify the password for the printer server (up to 63 characters).	
Polling Interval*	Specify an interval to make queries for jobs.	
Bindery/NDS Setting	Select "NDS".	
NDS Context Name	Specify the NDS context name connected with the print server (up to 191 characters).	
NDS Tree Name	Specify the NDS tree name connected with the printer server (up to 63 characters).	

Next, specify the following settings for "NetWare Setting".

#### For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)

- ✓ Before specifying settings for NDPS, check that the NDPS broker and NDPS manager have been created and loaded.
- Also, check that the TCP/IP protocol is specified in the NetWare server, the IP address is specified for this machine, then this machine is running.
- 1 Log in to NetWare as an administrator from a client computer.
- 2 Start up NWadmin.
- 3 Right -click "Organization" or "Organizational unit" container where a printer agent is created, and then select "NDPS Printer" on the "Create" submenu.
- 4 In the "NDPS Printer Name" box, enter the "printer name".
- 5 In the "Printer Agent Source" column, select "Create a New Printer Agent", and then click "Create".

- 6 Check the printer agent name, and then in the "NDPS Manager Name" box, browse through the NDPS manager names, and register it.
- 7 In "Gateway Types", select "Novell Printer Gateway", and then register it.
- 8 In the "Configure Novell DPS for Printer Agent" window, select "(None)" for the printer type and "Novell Port Handler" for the port handler type, and then register the settings.
- 9 In "Connection type", select "Remote (LPR on IP)", and then register it.
- 10 Enter the IP address set for this machine as the host address, enter "Print" as the printer name, and then click the "Finish" button to register the settings.
- **11** The printer driver registration screen appears. Select "None" for each operating system to complete the registration.

# 1.25.2 NetWare Status

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "NetWare Setting" - "NetWare Status".

NetWare connection status can be checked, if necessary.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>Vi</u> ew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help			
	Administrator			Logout ?
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			Ċ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	NetWare Status			
E-mail Setting	Server Name	C	Queue Name	
LDAP Setting	ServerName1		QueueNameName1	
-	ServerName2		QueueNameName2	
IPP Setting	ServerName3		QueueNameName3	
FTP Setting	ServerName4		QueueNameName4	
SNMP Setting	ServerName5		QueueNameName5	
•	ServerName6 ServerName7		QueueNameName6 QueueNameName7	
SMB Setting	ServerName8		QueueNameName8	
Web Service Settings	ServerName9		QueueNameName9	
Bonjour Setting	ServerName10		QueueNameName10	
NetWare Setting		I_		
NetWare Setting				
NetWare Status				
AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting				

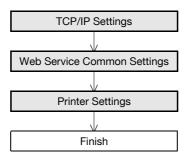
-

# **1.26 Using the WS print function**

Specify settings for printing by using Web service function.

Printing is possible using the Web service function in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008. The Web service function detects this machine connected to the network automatically, and then installs it as a WS printer. Specifying this machine installed as a WS printer when printing allows printing using HTTP for communication.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# ☜.

#### Note

For details on installing the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations].

# 1.26.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.26.2 Web Service Common Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Web Service Settings" - "Web Service Common Settings".

Specify the following setting.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help			
	Administrator			Logout ?
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)	)		¢
Maintenance Security	/ Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	Web Service Comm	on Settings		
E-mail Setting	* is reflected after reset.			
LDAP Setting	Friendly Name*	MF	P270030	
IPP Setting	SSL Setting		F 🛩	
FTP Setting				
SNMP Setting			[	OK Cancel
SMB Setting				
Web Service Settings				
Web Service Common Settings				
Printer Settings				
Scanner Settings				
Bonjour Setting				
NetWare Setting				
AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	

# 1.26.3 Printer Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Web Service Settings" - "Printer Settings".

Specify the following settings.

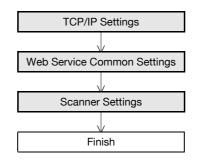
Network - Microsoft Internet Exp File Edit View Favorites Tools	Help			
	Administrator			Logout ?
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			C)
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	Printer Settings			
E-mail Setting	* is reflected after reset.			
LDAP Setting	Print Function	OI	N 💌	
IPP Setting	Printer Name*	MF	P270030	
FTP Setting	Printer Location*			
SNMP Setting	Printer Information*			
SMB Setting				
Web Service Settings			[	OK Cancel
Web Service Common Settings				
Printer Settings				
Scanner Settings				
Bonjour Setting				
NetWare Setting				
AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Print Function	Select "ON".	
Printer Name*	Specify the printer name (up to 63 characters).	
Printer Location*	Specify the printer location (up to 63 characters).	
Printer Information*	Specify the printer information (up to 63 characters).	

Specify settings for scanning using Web service function.

Data can be scanned using the Web service function in Windows Vista/7/Server 2008 to forward the scanned data to the computer. The Web service function detects this machine connected to the network, and then installs it as a WS scanner. Specifying this machine installed as a WS scanner when scanning allows scanning using HTTP for communication.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# ି ... Note

For details on the WS Scan function, refer to the User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations].

# 1.27.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.27.2 Web Service Common Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Web Service Settings" - "Web Service Common Settings".

Specify the following setting.

jle <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help			
		Administrator			Logout ?
		Ready to Scan			
		In Menu (Admin Mode)	)		Ċ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting		Web Service Comm	on Settings		
E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.			
LDAP Setting		Friendly Name*	M	FP270030	
IPP Setting		SSL Setting		FF V	
FTP Setting					
SNMP Setting					OK Cancel
SMB Setting				1	
Web Service Set	tings				
Web Service Settings	Common				
Printer Settin	gs				
Scanner Sett	ings				
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Settin	g				
Network Fax Set	ting				
WebDAV Setting					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Sett	ing				
SSDP Setting					
IEEE802.1X Authors Setting	entication				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	

# 1.27.3 Scanner Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Web Service Settings" - "Scanner Settings".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	<u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	<u>H</u> elp			
		Administrator			Logout
		Ready to Scan			
		In Menu (Admin Mode)			0
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting		Scanner Settings			
E-mail Setting		* is reflected after reset.			
LDAP Setting		Scan Function	0	N 🕶	
PP Setting		Scanner Name*	M	FP270030	
FTP Setting		Scanner Location*	-		
SNMP Setting		Scanner Information*	XX	XXXXXXX	
SMB Setting		Connection Timeout	12	0sec. (30-300)	
Web Service Set	tings				
Web Service Settings	Common			[	OK Cancel
Printer Settin	gs				
Scanner Setti	ngs				
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Settin	-				
Network Fax Set	ting				
• WebDAV Setting	s				
<ul> <li>OpenAPI Setting</li> </ul>					
TCP Socket Setti	ing				
SSDP Setting					
IEEE802.1X Authors Setting	entication				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Scan Function	Select "ON".	
Scanner Name*	Specify the scanner name (up to 63 characters).	
Scanner Location*	Specify the scanner location (up to 63 characters).	
Scanner Information*	Specify the scanner information (up to 63 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

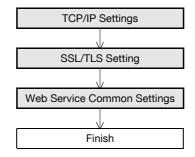
# **1.28 Using SSL for communication from Vista/7/Server 2008 to this machine with Web service**

# ି ... Note

In order to make the communication between this machine and the computer into the SSL communication, settings for the SSL communication must be made bidirectionally. Both this setting and the "Using SSL for communication from this machine to Vista/7/Server 2008 with Web service" on page 1-84 setting should be made.

When using the Web service function, specify settings for SSL-based encryption of communication from a Windows Vista/7/Server 2008-equipped computer to this machine. These settings ensure safer file transmission by encrypting Web service-based communication using SSL.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# Q

#### Detail

To encrypt communication from a computer to this machine using SSL, the computer must be able to resolve the names for this machine using the DNS server. Register this machine to the DNS server in advance, and specify settings for DNS at the computer side.

When the certificate of this machine is not published by certificate authority, register the certificate of this machine to "Trusted Root Certification Authorities" for the Local computer in advance.

# 1.28.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

### 1.28.2 SSL/TLS Setting

Encrypt communication with this machine using SSL.

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

### 1.28.3 Web Service Common Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Web Service Settings" - "Web Service Common Settings".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	
SSL Setting	Select "Enable".	

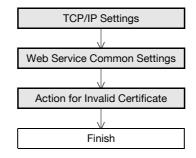
# **1.29** Using SSL for communication from this machine to Vista/7/Server 2008 with Web service

# Note

In order to make the communication between this machine and the computer into the SSL communication, settings for the SSL communication must be made bidirectionally. Both this setting and the "Using SSL for communication from Vista/7/Server 2008 to this machine with Web service" on page 1-83 setting should be made.

When using the Web service function, specify settings for SSL-based encryption of communication from this machine to a Windows Vista/7/Server 2008-equipped computer. These settings ensure safer file transmission by encrypting Web service-based communication using SSL.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# ⋞

Detail

To encrypt communication from this machine to a computer using SSL, create a certificate at the computer side in advance to associate TCP/IP with the communication port. (Default: Port No. 5385).

### 1.29.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

### 1.29.2 Web Service Common Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "Web Service Settings" - "Web Service Common Settings".

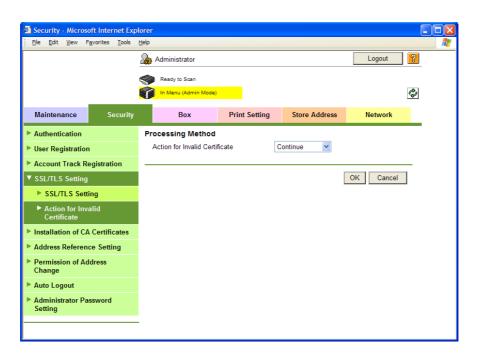
Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Friendly Name	Specify setting for Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	
SSL Setting	Select "Enable".	

# 1.29.3 Action for Invalid Certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - "Action for Invalid Certificate".

Specify the following setting.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

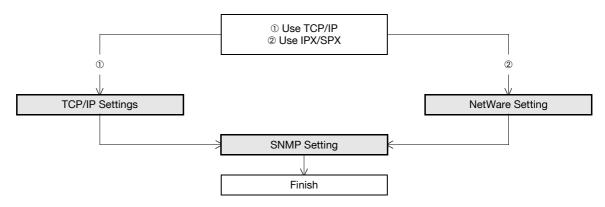
# **1.30** Monitoring this machine using the SNMP manager

Specify settings for monitoring this machine using the SNMP manager.

SNMP manager-based communication with this machine allows acquisition, management, and monitoring of the information of this machine via the network. SNMP runs in a TCP/IP or IPX/SPX environment.

In addition, use of the TRAP function of SNMP allows setting for notification of the status of this machine. For details, refer to "Providing notification of the status of this machine (TRAP)" on page 1-93.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



## 1.30.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.30.2 NetWare Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "NetWare Setting" - "NetWare Setting".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File E</u> dit ⊻iew F	Favorites Tools	Help							
		2. Ad	Iministrator					Logout	?
		<b>S</b>	Ready to Scan						
		<b>()</b>	n Menu (Admin Mode	)					Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Setting	St	tore Address		Network	
TCP/IP Setting		NetW	/are Setting						
E-mail Setting		* is r	eflected after reset.						
LDAP Setting		IPX	Setting*		ON N	1			
PP Setting			•	OFF, and then ON		anging settings.)			
FTP Setting		Eth	ernet Frame Type	*	Auto D	etect 💌			
SNMP Setting		Net	Ware Print Mode*		OFF	*			
SMB Setting			PServer Print Server I	lame*	MFP27	0030			
• Web Service Se	ttings		Print Server I			0050			
Bonjour Setting			Polling Interv		1	sec.(1-6553	5)		
• NetWare Setting			Bindery/NDS		NDS		/		
NetWare Sett	ing		Bindery	5					
NetWare Stat	us		File	Server Name*					
AppleTalk Settin	g		NDS						
Network Fax Set	tting			Context Name*					
WebDAV Setting	IS		NDS Nprinter/Rprinter	Tree Name"					
OpenAPI Setting	1		Print Server I	Name*	MFP27	0030			
TCP Socket Sett	ing		Printer Numb	er*	255	(0-255,255)	Auto)		
SSDP Setting		Use	er Authentication \$	Setting	ON N				
IEEE802.1X Auth	entication								
Setting						1	OK	Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type

# 1.30.3 SNMP Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "SNMP Setting". Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Expl	lorer				
<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools</u>	Help				
	Administrator			Logo	ut 🤋
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Addr	ress Netwo	ork
TCP/IP Setting	SNMP Setting				
E-mail Setting	SNMP		ON 💌		
LDAP Setting			SNMP v1/v2c		
IPP Setting			SNMP v3(IP)		
FTP Setting	UDP Port Setting		SNMP v1(IPX	s) 5535)	
SNMP Setting	ODF Foil Setting		[1-68	0000)	
SMB Setting	SNMP v1/v2c Setting				
Web Service Settings	Read Community I	Name	public		
Bonjour Setting	Vrite Community	Name	private		
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting	SNMP v3 Setting Context Name				1
Network Fax Setting					
WebDAV Settings	Read User Name	r Name	public initial		
<ul> <li>OpenAPI Setting</li> </ul>	Security Level		auth-password/pr	iv nanoword w	
TCP Socket Setting	auth-password		auti-passworu/pr	iv-password	
<ul> <li>SSDP Setting</li> </ul>	priv-password				
IEEE802.1X Authentication	Write User Name		restrict		
Setting	Security Level		auth-password/pr	riv-password 🔽	
	auth-password				
	priv-password				
	Encryption Algorith	ım	DES 🗸		
	Authentication Met		MD5 🔽		
	TRAP Setting				
	Allow Setting Trap Setting when	Authentication	Allow 👻		
	Fails	Authentication	Disable 💙		
				OK Ca	ancel

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SNMP	Specifies whether to use the SNMP. If yes, specify whether to use SNMP v1/v2 (IP), SNMP v3, and SNMP v1 (IPX). SNMP v1 (IPX) can be specified only when IPX is enabled.	Protocol to be used (TCP/IP or IPX/SPX)
UDP Port Setting	Default setting: 161 Specify the UDP port number.	
SNMP v1/v2c Setting	Specify settings for using SNMP v1/v2c.	
Read Community Name	Specify the community name to be used for scanning (up to 15 characters).	
Write Community Name	Specify the community name to be used for reading and writing (up to 15 characters).	
SNMP v3 Setting	Specify settings for SNMP v3.	
Context Name	Specify the context name (up to 63 characters).	
Discovery User Name	Specify the user name for detection (up to 32 characters).	
Read User Name	Specify the name of read only user (up to 32 characters).	
Security Level	Specify the security level for read only user.	
auth-password	Specify the read only user authentication password to be used for authentication (up to 32 characters).	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
priv-password	Specify the read only user privacy password to be used for privacy (encryption) (up to 32 characters).	
Write User Name	Specify the reading/writing user name (up to 32 characters).	
Security Level	Specify the security level for reading/writing user.	
auth-password	Specify the reading/writing user authentication password to be used for authentication (up to 32 characters).	
priv-password	Specify the reading/writing user privacy password to be used for privacy (encryption) (up to 32 characters).	
Encryption Algorithm	Specify the encryption algorithm.	
Authentication Method	Specify the authentication method.	

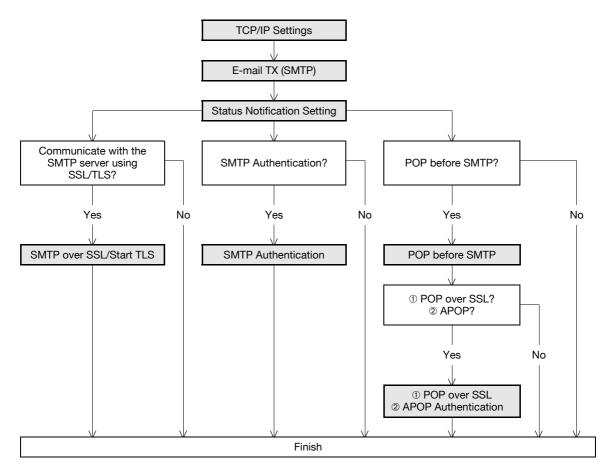
# **1.31 Providing notification of the status of this machine (E-mail)**

Specify settings for notifying the administrator of the machine status via E-mail.

Using this function provides notification for a specified address when a warning message occurs on this machine.

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 1-25.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



## 1.31.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.31.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail TX Setting	Select "E-mail TX Setting" check box.	
E-mail Notification	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	

Item	tem Definition		
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of sent messages.		
Server Capacity	To limit the maximum mail size, specify the max. allowance of the mail size including the attached file. Mails exceeding the maximum allowance are removed. If a mail is separated, this setting is disabled.	Receiving limit of the server	
Admin. E-mail Address	Displays the administrator address. If the administrator address is not specified, specify it at "Machine Setting".	Address for the adminis- trator	
Binary Division	nary Division To divide the mail size, select "Binary Division" check box. If the mail software used for receiving mails does not have the mail restore function, the mails may not be read.		
Divided Mail Size	To divide the mail, specify a divided mail size.	Receiving limit of the server	

# 1.31.3 Status Notification Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Status Notification Setting" - "E-mail Address" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

🗿 Maintenance - Mio		t Explorer						
Eile Edit View F	<u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help						
		Administrator			Logout	?		
		Ready to Scan						
		In Menu (Admin Mode	)			Ŷ		
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network			
Meter Count		Status Notification	Setting			_		
ROM Version		Destination	E	-mail Address1				
Import/Export		Notification Address						
	- Cattle -	Alert						
Status Notification Setting		🗖 Replenish Paper Tray						
Total Counter Notification Setting		JAM						
		PM Call						
Machine Setting		Replace Staples						
Online Assistance	e	Replenish Toner						
Date/Time Setting	g	Finisher Tray Full						
Timer Setting		Service Call						
Reset		Job Finished						
		Hole-Punch S	crap Box Full					
<ul> <li>External Memory Settings</li> </ul>	Function	🗖 Fusing Unit Y	ïeld					
Header/Footer Re	egistration							
License Settings				L	OK Cancel	I.		

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Notification Address	Specify the notification address.	Notification address
Replenish Paper Tray	Provides notification when a paper-out condition occurs.	
JAM	Provides notification when a paper misfeed occurs.	
PM Call	Provides notification when a periodic inspection is required.	
Replace Staples	Provides notification when a staple-out condition occurs.	
Replenish Toner	Provides notification when a toner-out condition occurs.	
Finisher Tray Full	Provides notification when the finisher tray becomes full.	
Service Call	Provides notification when a service call occurs.	
Job Finished	Provides notification when the job is completed.	
Hole-Punch Scrap Box Full	Provides notification when hole-punch scraps must be re- moved.	
Fusing Unit Yield	Provides notification when the fusing unit must be replaced.	

# 1.31.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS. For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 1-28.

# 1.31.5 SMTP Authentication

Specify the settings for SMTP authentication. For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 1-29.

### 1.31.6 POP before SMTP

Specify the settings for POP before SMTP. For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 1-29.

### 1.31.7 POP over SSL

Specify the settings for POP over SSL. For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 1-31.

## 1.31.8 APOP Authentication

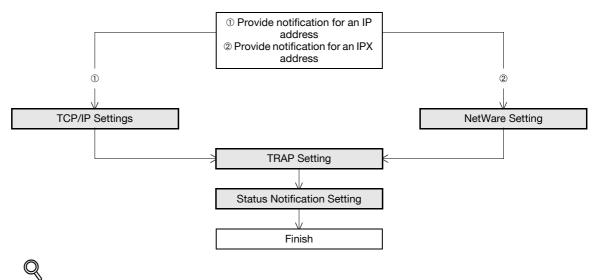
Specify the settings for APOP authentication. For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 1-32.

# **1.32** Providing notification of the status of this machine (TRAP)

Specify settings for notifying the administrator of the machine status using the TRAP function of SNMP.

Using this function provides notification for a specified IP address or IPX address when a warning message occurs on this machine.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### Detail

To use the TRAP function of SNMP, specify settings for SNMP in advance. For details, refer to "Monitoring this machine using the SNMP manager" on page 1-86.

# 1.32.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.32.2 NetWare Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "NetWare Setting" - "NetWare Setting".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools</u>	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Вох	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	NetWare Setting				
E-mail Setting	* is reflected after reset.				
LDAP Setting	IPX Setting*	(	DN 👻		1
PP Setting	(Turn the main switch	OFF, and then ON , w	hen changing settings.)		
FTP Setting	Ethernet Frame Type*	-	Auto Detect 💌		
SNMP Setting	NetWare Print Mode* PServer	C	DFF 💙		
SMB Setting	PServer Print Server N	ame*	/FP270030		
• Web Service Settings	Print Server P				
Bonjour Setting	Polling Interva	I* [1	sec.(1-65535)		
NetWare Setting	Bindery/NDS	L	1DS V		
NetWare Setting	Bindery				
NetWare Status		erver Name*			
AppleTalk Setting	NDS	Context Name*			
Network Fax Setting		Context Name"			
• WebDAV Settings	Nprinter/Rprinter	rree Name			
OpenAPI Setting	Print Server N	ame*	/FP270030		
TCP Socket Setting	Printer Numbe	er* 2	55 (0-255,255:A	uto)	
SSDP Setting	User Authentication Se	etting	N 💌		
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting					_

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type

## 1.32.3 TRAP Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "SNMP Setting". Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Allow Setting	Select "Allow".	
Trap Setting when Au- thentication Fails	Select whether to enable the TRAP function when authentication failed.	

# 1.32.4 Status Notification Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Status Notification Setting" - "IP (IPX) Address" - [Edit].

For details on the settings, refer to "Status Notification Setting" on page 1-91.

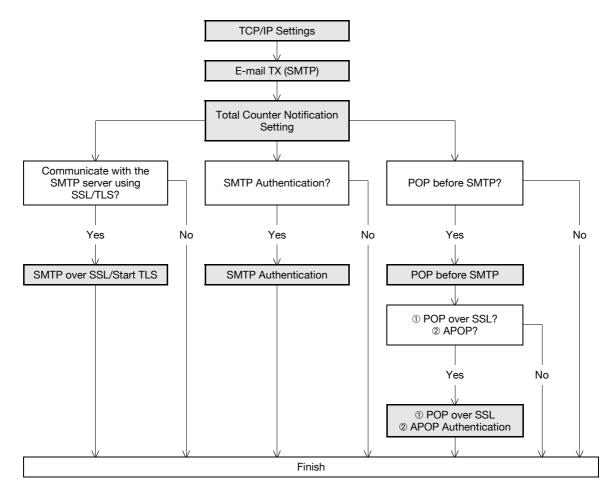
# **1.33** Providing notification of the counter information status of this machine via E-mail

Specify settings for providing notification of counter information of this machine via E-mail.

Using this function provides notification of counter information managed by this machine for a specified address. The counter of this machine can be checked by selecting PageScope Web Connection - Maintenance tab - "Meter Count".

Communication by combining POP before SMTP, APOP, SMTP authentication or encryption using SSL/TLS is available. For details, refer to "Sending scan data by E-mail" on page 1-25.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.33.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

## 1.33.2 E-mail TX (SMTP)

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "E-mail Setting" - "E-mail TX (SMTP)".

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
E-mail TX Setting	Select "E-mail TX Setting" check box.	
Total Counter Notifica- tion	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server address. (Format: "***.***.", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port Number	Default setting: 25 Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Connection Timeout	Specify the time period before the server connection times out.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of sent messages.	
Server Capacity	To limit the maximum mail size, specify the max. allowance of the mail size including the attached file. Mails exceeding the maximum allowance are removed. If a mail is separated, this setting is disabled.	Receiving limit of the server
Admin. E-mail Address	Displays the administrator address. If the administrator address is not specified, specify it at "Machine Setting".	Address for the adminis- trator
Binary Division	To divide the mail size, select "Binary Division" check box. If the mail software used for receiving mails does not have the mail restore function, the mails may not be read.	Restore function of the mail soft
Divided Mail Size	To divide the mail, specify a divided mail size.	Receiving limit of the server

# 1.33.3 Total Counter Notification Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Total Counter Notification Setting".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				1 🗖
	Administrator			Logout	] 🩎
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count	Total Counter Notific	ation Setting			
ROM Version	Model Name				
Import/Export					
Status Notification Setting	Schedule Setting				
Total Counter Notification	Schedule 1 C Daily				
Setting	Interval of Day	(s)	1 (1-31)		
Machine Setting	C Weekly	(-)	(1-31)		
Online Assistance	Interval of We	ek(s)	1 (1-6)		
Date/Time Setting	Day of the We		Mon 🗸		
Timer Setting	Monthly				
Reset	Interval of Mor	nth(s)	1 (1-6)		
External Memory Function	Date of the M	onth	1 (1-31)		
Settings	Schedule 2				
Header/Footer Registration	C Daily				
License Settings	Interval of Day	(s)	1 (1-31)		
	C Weekly				
	Interval of We	ek(s)	1 (1-6)		
	Day of the We	ek	Mon 🖌		
	Monthly				
	Interval of Mor	. ,	1(1-6)		
	Date of the M	onth	1 (1-31)		
	Register Notification Address 1	Address			
	E-mail Address				
	Notifies by Sch	edule1			
	Notifies by Sch				
	Address 2				
	E-mail Address				
	Notifies by Sch				
	Notifies by Sch	edule2			
	Address 3				
	E-mail Address				
	Notifies by Sch				
	Notifies by Sch	edule2			
			Send Now	OK Cancel	
			Send Now	Cancer	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Model Name	Specify the model name indicated in the notification mes- sage (up to 20 characters).	
Schedule Setting	Specify the conditions for the notification schedule. Sched- ules 1 and 2 can be registered with different settings.	Notification schedule
Register Notification Ad- dress	Specify the notification addresses (up to 320 characters). Select the desired notification schedule.	Notification address

## 1.33.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Specify the settings for SMTP over SSL/Start TLS.

For details, refer to "SMTP over SSL/Start TLS" on page 1-28.

### 1.33.5 SMTP Authentication

Specify the settings for SMTP authentication. For details, refer to "SMTP Authentication" on page 1-29.

#### 1.33.6 POP before SMTP

Specify the settings for POP before SMTP. For details, refer to "POP before SMTP" on page 1-29.

#### 1.33.7 POP over SSL

Specify the settings for POP over SSL. For details, refer to "POP over SSL" on page 1-31.

#### 1.33.8 APOP Authentication

Specify the settings for APOP authentication. For details, refer to "APOP Authentication" on page 1-32.

#### 1.33.9 Meter Count

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Meter Count". The counter information managed by the machine can be displayed.

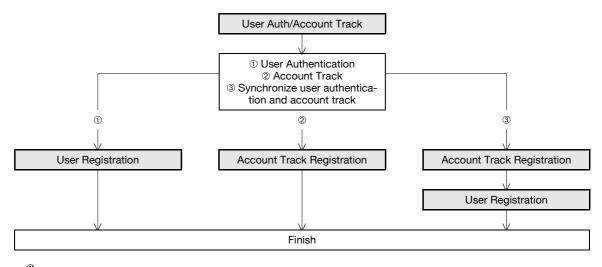
🚰 Maintenance - Microsoft Internet	Explorer				
Eile Edit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	2
	-				_
	Ready to Scan			_	_
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			6	5
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count	Total Counter				
ROM Version	Total	460			
	Total Duplex	17			
Import/Export	# of Originals	423			
Status Notification Setting	# of Used Paper	404			
Total Counter Notification	Copy Counter				
Setting	Total	406			
Machine Setting	Large Size	19			
Online Assistance	Print Counter				
Date/Time Setting	Total	45			
-	Large Size	0			
Timer Setting					
Reset	Scan / Fax Counter	<b>D I</b> ·		1	
External Memory Function	Total	Print 9	Scans 56		
	Total	-			
Settings	Lorgo Cizo	0			
Settings Header/Footer Registration	Large Size	0	0		
Header/Footer Registration	Large Size Fax TX	0	0		
-				J	
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX Fax RX	0		I	
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX	0	Count		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX Fax RX Paper Size / Type Co	0 0 punter			
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX Fax RX Paper Size / Type Cc Paper Size	0 0 punter Paper Type	Count		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX Fax RX Paper Size / Type Cc Paper Size 11" x 17"	0 0 Dunter Paper Type Not Specified	Count		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX Fax RX Paper Size / Type Co Paper Size 11" x 17" 8 1/2" x 14" 8 1/2" x 14" 5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Count 0 0 0 0		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX           Fax RX           Paper Size           11" x 17"           8 1/2" x 14"           8 1/2" x 11"           5 1/2" x 8 1/2"           A3	0 0 0 Dunter Paper Type Not Specified Not Specified Not Specified Not Specified	Count 0 0 0 0 0 0		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX           Fax RX           Paper Size           11" x 17"           8 1/2" x 14"           8 1/2" x 11"           5 1/2" x 11"           5 1/2" x 8 1/2"           A3           B4	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Count 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX           Fax RX           Paper Size / Type Cc           Paper Size           11" x 17"           8 1/2" x 14"           8 1/2" x 11"           5 1/2" x 8 1/2"           A3           B4           B5	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Count 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX           Fax RX           Paper Size           Paper Size           11" x 17"           8 1/2" x 14"           8 1/2" x 14"           5 1/2" x 8 1/2"           A3           B4           B5           A4	0 0 0 0 0 Paper Type Not Specified	Count 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
Header/Footer Registration	Fax TX           Fax RX           Paper Size / Type Cc           Paper Size           11" x 17"           8 1/2" x 14"           8 1/2" x 11"           5 1/2" x 8 1/2"           A3           B4           B5	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	Count 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		

# **1.34** Limiting users using this machine (Machine authentication)

Specify settings for using this machine using machine authentication.

Specify user authentication and account track settings in order to control the use of this machine. User authentication settings are specified to manage individuals, and account track settings are specified to manage groups and multiple users. By specifying both user authentication and account track settings, the number of prints made by each account can be managed for each individual user.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



۵...

Note

For details on the machine authentication, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].

# 1.34.1 User Auth/Account Track

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "User Auth/Account Track".

Specify the following settings.

When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this menu is not displayed.

Security - Microsof	ft Internet Exp	olore	er							٥
Eile Edit View Fa	vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help	0							
		2	Administrator					Logout	?	
			Ready to Scan							
_			In Menu (Admin Mode)						Ŷ	
Maintenance	Security		Box	Prin	t Setting		Store Address	Network		
Authentication		U	Jser Auth/Account 1	Track						
User Auth/Accord	ount Track		General Settings			ON	(MFP)			
External Serve	r		Public User Access			Allo	w	*		
Registration			Ticket Hold Time Sett Directory)	ing (Acti	ve	60	Minute (1-60)			
Default Function Permission	on		Account Track			ON	~			
User Registration			Account Track Input N	Nethod		Aco	count Name & Passw	rord 🖌		
Account Track Reg	gistration		Synchronize User Aut Account Track	thenticat	ion &	Syr	nchronize 💌			
SSL/TLS Setting			Number of Counters A Users	ssigned	for	500	(1-999)			
Installation of CA	Certificates		When Number of Jobs Maximum	Reach		Ski	p Job 😽			
Address Reference	e Setting		waximum							
Permission of Add Change	lress	1					[	OK Cancel		
Auto Logout							-			
Administrator Pass Setting	sword									
										_

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (MFP)".	
Public User Access	Specify whether to allow public users.	Whether to allow public users
Account Track	To use the account track function, select "ON".	Whether to use Account Track
Account Track Input Method	To use the account track function, select the desired authen- tication method.	
Synchronize User Au- thentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication and account track func- tions, select "Synchronize".	Whether to synchronize the user authentication and account track func- tions
Number of Counters As- signed for Users	To use the user authentication and account track, specify the number of counters assigned for users.	
When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum	Specify the operation that is performed when the number of copies or printouts have reached its maximum.	

# Q

#### Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", the authentication method cannot be set to "OFF". In addition, "Public User Access" is set to "Restrict".

### 1.34.2 User Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "User Registration" - [New Registration].

Specify the following settings.

When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this menu is not displayed.

Security - Microsoft Internet Exp Elle Edit View Favorites Tools	Help		
- Est 15- 19-000 1000	2		Logout
	Administrator		Logout
	Ready to Scan		
	In Menu (Admin Mode)		Ç
Maintenance Security	Box Print	Setting Store Address	Network
Authentication	User Registration		
User Registration	No.		
Account Track Registration	User Name		
SSL/TLS Setting	E-mail Address		
Installation of CA Certificates	User Password		
Address Reference Setting	Retype User Password		
Permission of Address	Account Name		-
Change		Search from List	
Auto Logout		Registered Account Na	me
Administrator Password			
Setting	Specify Icon		
	-	Search from List	
		Registered icon	
	Function Permission		
	Copy	Allow 🗸	
	Scan	Allow 👻	
	Save to External Memory	Restrict 🗸	
	Fax	Allow 🗸	
	Print	Allow 🔽	
	User Box	Allow 🗸	
	Print Scan/Fax from User Box	Allow 🔽	
	Manual Destination Input	Allow	
	Max. Allowance Set		
	Total Allowance		
	Total		000)
	Box Administration	(1-99999	aaa)
	Box Count		
	1	(0-1000)	
	Limiting Access to Destinations		
	Reference Allowed Group	Carrot from 1/1	
		Search from List	
		Registered Reference G	Group Number
		~	Total0
	Access Allowed Level		-
		0 🗸	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Enter the registration number.	
User Name	Enter the user name.	
E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address.	
User Password	Enter the password.	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Retype User Password	Enter the password again.	
Account Name	Register the account to which the user belongs. Before se- lecting the account name, register the account. When syn- chronization of the user authentication and account is specified, this item appears.	
Specify Icon	Specify an icon for user from [Search from List].	
Function Permission	Specify whether to allow copy operations, scan operations, saving to external memory, fax operations, printing, user box operation, and print scan/fax from user box.	
Max. Allowance Set	Specify whether to limit the max. allowance of output.	
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the destination access right of users to be registered When "Reference Allowed Group" is selected, click [Search from List], and then select a reference allowed group from the list. When "Access Allowed Level" is selected, specify a level.	

# Q

#### Detail

If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].

For details on limiting access to destinations, refer to "Limiting accessible destinations by user" on page 1-154.

# 1.34.3 Account Track Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Account Track Registration" - [New Registration].

Specify the following settings.

When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this menu is not displayed.

Security - Microsoft Internet Ex	plorer					5
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	·					
	Administrator			Logout	1 ?	
	Administrator			Logour		
	Ready to Scan					
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
Authentication	Account Track Regis	tration				
User Registration	No.	[				
Account Track Registration	Account Name	[				
SSL/TLS Setting	Password	[				
Installation of CA Certificates	Retype Password	[				
Address Reference Setting	Max. Allowance Set					
Permission of Address	Total Allowance Set					
Change	🗆 Total					
Auto Logout		1	(1-99999999	9)		
	Box Administration					
	Box Count					
		1	(0-1000)			
				OK Cancel		
						_

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Enter the registration number.	
Account Name	Enter the account name.	
Password	Enter the password.	
Retype Password	Enter the password again.	
Max. Allowance Set	Displays whether to limit the max. allowance of output.	

# Q

#### Detail

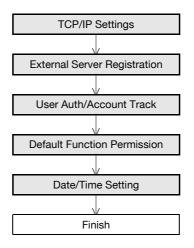
If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].

# **1.35** Limiting users using this machine (Active Directory)

Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using Active Directory.

To perform authentication using Active Directory of Windows 2000 Server or Windows 2003 Server, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.35.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

When using Active Directory, specify a DNS server synchronized with Active Directory in the DNS Server Settings of this machine.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.35.2 External Server Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "External Server Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Security - Microsoft Internet I Elle Edit View Favorites Tool				
	Administrator		Logout	
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)		Ŷ	
Maintenance Securi	y Box Prin	nt Setting Store Addres	ss Network	
▼ Authentication	External Server Registration	on		
User Auth/Account Track	No.	1		
External Server	External Server Name			
Registration	External Server Type Active Directory	Active Directory	<b>*</b>	
Default Function Permission	Default Domain Name			
User Registration	NTLM			
Account Track Registration	Default Domain Name			
SSL/TLS Setting	NDS			
<ul> <li>Installation of CA Certificates</li> </ul>	Default NDS Tree Name			
	Default NDS Context Nan	ne		
Address Reference Setting	LDAP Server Address	Please check to		
Permission of Address Change	Server Address	Please check to	enter host name.	
Auto Logout	Port No.	389 (1-6553		
Administrator Password	Enable SSL	000 (1-0000	5)	
Setting	Port No.(SSL)	636 (1-6553	35)	
	Search Base	(1-0555		
	Timeout	60 sec. (5-3)		
	Authentication Method	Simple	,	
	Search Attribute	uid		
			OK Cancel	
			Or Ouncer	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "Active Directory".	
Default Domain Name	Enter the default domain name.	Default domain name

# 1.35.3 User Auth/Account Track

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "User Auth/Account Track".

Specify the following settings.

When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this menu is not displayed.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	<u>H</u> elp				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				¢,
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		User Auth/Account T	rack			_
User Auth/Acc	count Track	General Settings		ON (External Server) 🔽		
External Serv	ver	Public User Access		Restrict	*	-
Registration		Ticket Hold Time Setti Directory)	ng (Active	60 Minute (1-60)		
Default Funct Permission	ion	Account Track		ON 🕶		1
User Registration	1	Account Track Input N	lethod	Account Name & Passw	rord 😽	
Account Track R	egistration	Synchronize User Aut Account Track	hentication &	Synchronize 💌		
SSL/TLS Setting		Number of Counters A Users	ssigned for	500 (1-999)		
Installation of CA	A Certificates	When Number of Jobs	Reach	Skip Job 💙		
Address Referen	ce Setting	Maximum		· •		
Permission of Ad Change	Idress			[	OK Cancel	
Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	issword					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	
Ticket Hold Time Setting (Active Directory)	Specify the ticket hold time.	

# 1.35.4 Default Function Permission

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "Default Function Permission".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools</u>	Help				
	🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Addres	s Network	
▼ Authentication	Default Function Per	mission			
User Auth/Account Track	Сору		Allow 🔽		
External Server	Scan		Allow 🖌		
Registration	Save to External N	lemory	Restrict 🛩		
Default Function	Fax		Allow 🖌		
Permission	Print		Allow 🖌		
User Registration	User Box		Allow 🖌		
Account Track Registration	Print Scan/Fax from U	ser Box	Allow 🗸		
SSL/TLS Setting	Manual Destination Inp	ut	Allow 🗸		
Installation of CA Certificates					
Address Reference Setting				OK Cancel	
Permission of Address Change					_
Auto Logout					
Administrator Password Setting					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Сору	Limits functions available to authorized users on this ma-	
Scan	chine. Specify whether to allow each function.	
Save to External Memory		
Fax		
Print		
User Box		
Print Scan/Fax from User Box		
Manual Destination Input		

# 1.35.5 Date/Time Setting

When using Active Directory, specify the date and time on this machine. For details, refer to "Specifying the date and time on this machine" on page 1-18.

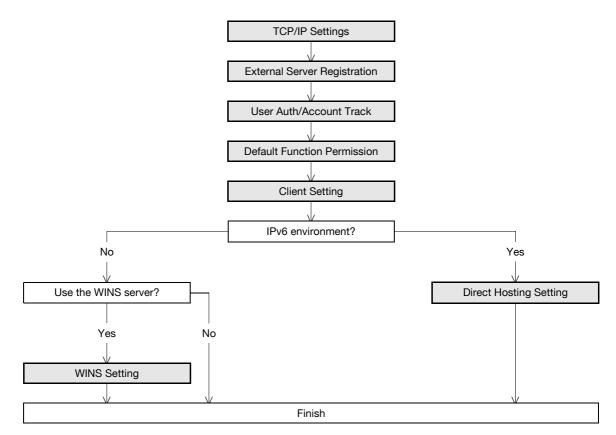
# **1.36** Limiting users using this machine (Windows domain/workgroup)

Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using NTLM authentication.

To perform authentication using NTLM when using Windows NT4.0 or using Active Directory of Windows 2000 Server or Windows Server 2003, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

This machine supports the Direct Hosting service. When the NTLM authentication is made in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting is required to be enabled. Enabling the Direct Hosting setting allows this machine to use the DNS server to obtain the IPv6 address of the Windows server.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.36.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

When the NTLM authentication is made in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting is required to be enabled. With the DNS server set up, be sure to make the DNS setting of this machine correctly.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.36.2 External Server Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "External Server Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Security - Micros		<u>H</u> elp				
		Administrator			Logout	🥐
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		External Server Regi	stration			_
User Auth/Acc	count Track	No.	1			
External Serv	/er	External Server Name	Ľ			
Registration		External Server Type	١	NTLM v1 🖌		
Default Funct Permission	ion	Active Directory	-			
		Default Domain Na NTI M	me			-
<ul> <li>User Registration</li> </ul>		Default Domain Na	me [			
Account Track R	egistration	NDS	L			
SSL/TLS Setting	l -	Default NDS Tree N	Vame			
Installation of CA	A Certificates	Default NDS Conte	xt Name			
Address Referen	ce Setting	LDAP	L			
Permission of Ac Change	ldress	Server Address	Г	Please check to enter	r host name.	
•			Ľ			
Auto Logout		Port No.	3	89 (1-65535)		
<ul> <li>Administrator Pa Setting</li> </ul>	issword	Enable SSL	_			
3		Port No.(SSL)	6	36 (1-65535)		
		Search Base				
		Timeout	6	0 sec. (5-300)		
		Authentication Met	hod S	Simple 🔽		
		Search Attribute	u	id		
					OK Cancel	
				L		

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NTLM v1" or "NTLM v2". NTLMv2 is applied from Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 4).	
Default Domain Name	Enter the default domain name. Enter the default domain name in uppercase letters.	Default domain name

# 1.36.3 User Auth/Account Track

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "User Auth/Account Track".

Specify the following setting.

When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this menu is not displayed.

Security - Microsoft Elle Edit View Favo		orer <u>H</u> elp				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				¢
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▼ Authentication		User Auth/Account T	rack			_
User Auth/Accou	nt Track	General Settings		ON (External Server) 💌		
External Server Registration		Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Sett	ing (Active	Restrict 60 Minute (1-60)	*	-
Default Function Permission		Directory) Account Track		ON 💌		
User Registration		Account Track Input N		Account Name & Passw	ord 📉	
Account Track Regi	stration	Synchronize User Aut Account Track	hentication &	Synchronize 👻		
SSL/TLS Setting		Number of Counters A Users	ssigned for	500 (1-999)		
Installation of CA Ce	ertificates	When Number of Jobs Maximum	Reach	Skip Job 🔽		
Address Reference	Setting	aximum				
Permission of Addre Change	955				OK Cancel	]
Auto Logout						
Administrator Passv Setting	vord					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	

#### 1.36.4 Default Function Permission

Limits functions available to authorized users on this machine. For details, refer to "Default Function Permission" on page 1-107.

#### 1.36.5 Client Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "SMB Setting" - "Client Setting".

Specify the following setting.

Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	Client Setting				
E-mail Setting	SMB TX Setting		ON 🔽		
LDAP Setting	NTLM Setting		v1 🛩		
IPP Setting	User Authentication(N	ΓLM)	ON 🔽		
FTP Setting					-
SNMP Setting				OK Cancel	
SMB Setting					
WINS Setting					
Client Setting					
Print Setting					
Direct Hosting Setting					
Web Service Settings					
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
Network Fax Setting					
WebDAV Settings					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setting					
SSDP Setting					
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
User Authentication (NTLM)	Select "ON".	

# Q

Detail

Specifying "OFF" for "User authentication (NTLM)" synchronizes with the user authentication setting, switching to "ON (MFP)".

# 1.36.6 WINS Setting

To use the WINS server, specify settings for the WINS server.

For details, refer to "WINS Setting" on page 1-24.

#### 1.36.7 Direct Hosting Setting

When the NTLM authentication is made in the IPv6 environment, the Direct Hosting setting is required to be enabled.

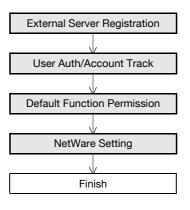
For details, refer to "Direct Hosting Setting" on page 1-23.



Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using NDS.

To perform NDS-based authentication using NetWare 5.1 or NetWare 6.0, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# Q

Detail

NDS is available only when IPX is used as the protocol. NDS is not available when IP is used.

#### 1.37.1 External Server Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "External Server Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Security - Microsoft Internet E Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	· ·				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Securit	y Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	External Server Regi	stration			_
User Auth/Account Track	No.	1			
External Server	External Server Name	L			
Registration	External Server Type	Ν	DS 💌		
Default Function Permission	Active Directory Default Domain Na				
User Registration	NTLM				
Account Track Registration	Default Domain Na	ime			
•	NDS				
SSL/TLS Setting	Default NDS Tree I	Name			
Installation of CA Certificates	Default NDS Conte	ext Name			
Address Reference Setting	LDAP				
Permission of Address Change	Server Address		Please check to ente	r host name.	
Auto Logout	B (N				
Administrator Password	Port No.	38	<sup>39</sup> (1-65535)		
Setting	Port No.(SSL)	6	36 (1-65535)		
	Search Base		<u> </u>		
	Timeout	60	(5.000)		
	Authentication Me		) sec. (5-300)		
	Search Attribute	tnoa s	•		
	Search Attribute	u	u		
					_
			L	OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NDS".	
Default NDS Tree Name	Enter the default NDS tree name.	
Default NDS Context Name	Enter the default NDS context name.	

# 1.37.2 User Auth/Account Track

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "User Auth/Account Track".

Specify the following setting.

When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this menu is not displayed.

Security	Administrator  Administrator  Ready to Scan  Ready to Scan  Box  User Auth/Account Tr  General Settings  Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Settin Directory)			gout ?
	Ready to Scan Re	ack	Store Address Net	
	In Menu (Admin Mode) Box User Auth/Account Tr General Settings Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Settir	ack	ON (External Server) V	
	Box User Auth/Account Tr General Settings Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Settir	ack	ON (External Server) V	
	User Auth/Account Tr General Settings Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Settin	ack	ON (External Server) V	work
nt Track	General Settings Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Settir			
nt Track	Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Settir	ng (Active		
	Ticket Hold Time Settir	ng (Active	Restrict 🖌	
		ng (Active		
	Directory)		60 Minute (1-60)	
	Account Track		ON 🕶	
	Account Track Input M	ethod	Account Name & Password 😪	
tration	Synchronize User Auth Account Track	entication &	Synchronize	
	Number of Counters As Users	ssigned for	500 (1-999)	
rtificates		Reach	Skip Job 🔽	
Setting	widXIIIIuIII			
<b>SS</b>			ОК	Cancel
ord				
rt Se	ificates etting	ation Account Track Number of Counters As Users When Number of Jobs Maximum	Number of Counters Assigned for Users When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum	ation Account Track Synchronize  Number of Counters Assigned for Users When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum OK OK

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	

#### 1.37.3 Default Function Permission

Limits functions available to authorized users on this machine. For details, refer to "Default Function Permission" on page 1-107.

## 1.37.4 NetWare Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "NetWare Setting" - "NetWare Setting".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools E</u>	<u>H</u> elp				
	Administrator			Logout	?
1	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	NetWare Setting				
E-mail Setting	* is reflected after reset.				
LDAP Setting	IPX Setting*		ON 🗸		
IPP Setting	(Turn the main switch	OFF, and then ON , v	vhen changing settings.)		
FTP Setting	Ethernet Frame Type*		Auto Detect 💌		
SNMP Setting	NetWare Print Mode* PServer		OFF 🔽		
SMB Setting	P Server Print Server N	ame*	MFP270030		
Web Service Settings	Print Server P	assword*			
Bonjour Setting	Polling Interva	*	1 sec.(1-65535	5)	
NetWare Setting	Bindery/NDS	Setting*	NDS	1	
NetWare Setting	Bindery				
NetWare Status		Server Name*			
AppleTalk Setting	NDS	Context Name*			
Network Fax Setting		Tree Name*			
WebDAV Settings	Nprinter/Rprinter	ince Marine			
OpenAPI Setting	Print Server N	ame*	MFP270030		
TCP Socket Setting	Printer Numbe	er*	255 (0-255,255)	Auto)	_
SSDP Setting	User Authentication S	etting	ON 🔽		
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting			-		

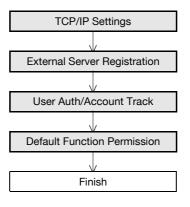
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Specify the frame type to be used.	Frame type
User Authentication Set- ting	Select "ON".	

# **1.38** Limiting users using this machine (NDS over TCP/IP)

Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using NDS.

To perform NDS over TCP/IP-based authentication using NetWare 5.1, NetWare 6.0 or NetWare 6.5, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



# Q

Detail

Be sure to apply the up-to-date service pack to each of the NetWare versions.

#### 1.38.1 TCP/IP Settings

A setting is made to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

When using the NDS over TCP/IP, the DNS server is required to be specified in [DNS Server Settings] of this machine. While in the authentication, the IP address of the NDS authentication server can be obtained by inquiring of the specified DNS server about the tree name and the context name.

# 1.38.2 External Server Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "External Server Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Security - Microsof		orer Help				
		Administrator			Logout	2
		Ready to Scan				
	l	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		External Server Regi	stration			_
User Auth/Acco	ount Track	No.	1			
External Serve	r	External Server Name	L			
Registration		External Server Type	Ν	IDS over TCP/IP 👻		
Default Function Permission	on	Active Directory Default Domain Na	та Г			
<ul> <li>User Registration</li> </ul>		NTLM	L			
Ŭ		Default Domain Na	me 🔽			
Account Track Reg	gistration	NDS				
SSL/TLS Setting		Default NDS Tree I	Name			
Installation of CA	Certificates	Default NDS Conte	xt Name			
Address Reference	e Setting	LDAP				
Permission of Add Change	ress	Server Address		Please check to ente	er host name.	
U			Ĺ			
Auto Logout		Port No.	3	89 (1-65535)		
Administrator Pass Setting	sword	Enable SSL	-			
3		Port No.(SSL)	6	36 (1-65535)		
		Search Base				
		Timeout	6	0 sec. (5-300)		
		Authentication Met	hod	Simple 🗸		
		Search Attribute	ui	id		
				l	OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NDS over TCP/IP".	
Default NDS Tree Name	Enter the default NDS tree name (up to 63 characters).	
Default NDS Context Name	Enter the default NDS context name (up to 191 characters).	

## 1.38.3 User Auth/Account Track

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "User Auth/Account Track".

Specify the following setting.

Security - Microsoft Internet Exp	lorer				ſ
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ç
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▼ Authentication	User Auth/Account T	rack			
User Auth/Account Track	General Settings	0	N (External Server) 💌		
External Server Registration	Public User Access Ticket Hold Time Sett		Minute (1-60)	*	
Default Function Permission	Directory) Account Track	0	N 🗸		
User Registration	Account Track Input N		ccount Name & Passw	ord 🚩	
Account Track Registration	Synchronize User Aut Account Track	hentication & S	ynchronize 🛛 👻		
SSL/TLS Setting	Number of Counters A Users	ssigned for 50	00 (1-999)		
Installation of CA Certificates	When Number of Jobs Maximum	Reach S	kip Job 🔽		
Address Reference Setting	Waximum				
Permission of Address Change				OK Cancel	
Auto Logout					
<ul> <li>Administrator Password Setting</li> </ul>					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	

### 1.38.4 Default Function Permission

Limits functions available to authorized users on this machine.

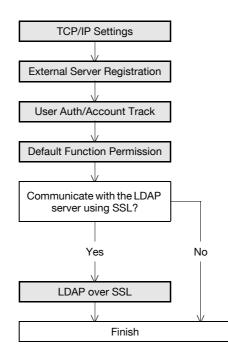
For details, refer to "Default Function Permission" on page 1-107.



Specify settings for limiting users of this machine using the LDAP server.

To perform authentication using the LDAP server, use this setting. This setting limits functions available on a user basis.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.39.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.39.2 External Server Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "External Server Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools</u>	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	2
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	External Server Regis	tration			
User Auth/Account Track	No.	1			
External Server	External Server Name				
Registration	External Server Type	LC	DAP 💙		
Default Function Permission	Active Directory Default Domain Nar				
	NTLM				
User Registration	Default Domain Nar	ne 🗌			
Account Track Registration	NDS				
SSL/TLS Setting	Default NDS Tree N	ame			
Installation of CA Certificates	Default NDS Contex	kt Name			
Address Reference Setting	LDAP				
Permission of Address Change	Server Address		Please check to ente	r host name.	
-					
Auto Logout	Port No.	38	9 (1-65535)		
Administrator Password Setting	Enable SSL				
5	Port No.(SSL)	63	6 (1-65535)		
	Search Base				
	Timeout	60	sec. (5-300)		
	Authentication Meth	nod Si	mple 👻		
	Search Attribute	uic	ł		
			[	OK Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of the external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "LDAP".	
Server Address	Specify the LDAP server address. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255) If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name. This item can also be specified with IPv6.	Address of the server
Port No.	Specify the port number.	Port number for the serv- er
Search Base	Specify the search starting point in a hierarchical structure placed on the LDAP server. Searches are performed by also including the subdirectories lower than the starting point that was specified.	
Timeout	Specify the maximum wait time for a search operation.	
Authentication Method	Select the authentication method used for logging in to the LDAP server.	Authentication method for the server
Search Attribute	If "Digest-MD5" is selected as the authentication method, specify the search attribute.	

# 1.39.3 User Auth/Account Track

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "User Auth/Account Track".

Specify the following setting.

When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this menu is not displayed.

Security - Microsoft Internet Ex	plorer					
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help					1
	Administrator			Logout	?	
	Ready to Scan					
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
Authentication	User Auth/Account Trac	k				
User Auth/Account Track	General Settings		ON (External Server) 🗸	]		
External Server	Public User Access		Restrict	*	-	
Registration	Ticket Hold Time Setting ( Directory)	Active	60 Minute (1-60)			
Default Function Permission	Account Track		ON 🗸			
User Registration	Account Track Input Meth	od	Account Name & Passv	vord 😪		
Account Track Registration	Synchronize User Authen Account Track	tication &	Synchronize 🗸			
SSL/TLS Setting	Number of Counters Assig Users	ned for	500 (1-999)			
Installation of CA Certificates	When Number of Jobs Re Maximum	ach	Skip Job 👻			
Address Reference Setting	waximum					
Permission of Address Change			[	OK Cancel	]	
Auto Logout						
<ul> <li>Administrator Password Setting</li> </ul>						

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
General Settings	Select "ON (External Server)".	

# 1.39.4 Default Function Permission

Limits functions available to authorized users on this machine. For details, refer to "Default Function Permission" on page 1-107.

### 1.39.5 LDAP over SSL

#### **External Server Registration**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Authentication" - "External Server Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Enable SSL	To encrypt communication between this machine and the LDAP server using SSL, select the "Enable SSL" check box.	Whether the sever sup- ports SSL
Port Number (SSL)	Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	Port number for the serv- er

#### Action for Invalid Certificate

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "SSL/TLS Setting" - "Action for Invalid Certificate".

Specify the following setting.

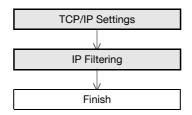
🗿 Security - Microso						
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help			Logout	?
		Administrator			Logout	<u>-8</u>
		Ready to Scan				_a⊉_
		In Menu (Aomin Mode)				¢,
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Processing Method				_
User Registration		Action for Invalid Certi	ficate	Continue 👻		
Account Track Residual Account Account Track Residual Account Account Track Residual Account Acc	-					1
▼ SSL/TLS Setting					OK Cancel	
SSL/TLS Setting Action for Invition	•					
Certificate	anu					
Installation of CA	Certificates					
Address Reference	-					
Permission of Ad Change	ldress					
Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					
		-				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Action for Invalid Certificate	Specify the operation when the validity period for the re- ceived certificate has expired. If "Continue" is selected, processing continues even if the date of the certificate is invalid. If "Delete the Job" is selected, the job is deleted if the date of the certificate is invalid.	

Specify settings for performing IP address filtering.

Performing IP address filtering limits access from specified IP addresses. Specify addresses from which this machine is accessible and inaccessible.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



#### 1.40.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.40.2 IP Filtering

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "IP Filtering".

Specify the following settings.

		Administrator					Logout	8
							5	1 🔜
		Ready to Scan	Martal					ø₽-
		In Menu (Admin)	Mode)					Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Prin	t Setting	Store Addres	s	Network	
TCP/IP Setting		IP Filtering						
TCP/IP Settin	g	Permit Access		D	isable 💌			
IP Filtering		Set1	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		]	
► IPsec		Set2	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		]	
E-mail Setting		Set3	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		]	
LDAP Setting		Set4	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		]	
IPP Setting		Set5	0.0.00		- 0.0.0.0		]	
FTP Setting		Deny Access		D	isable 🔽		-	
SNMP Setting		Set1	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		1	
SMB Setting		Set2	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		1	
Web Service Set	ttings	Set3	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		1	
Bonjour Setting		Set4	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		1	
NetWare Setting		Set5	0.0.0.0		- 0.0.0.0		1	
AppleTalk Settin	g	0613	0.0.0.0		0.0.0.0		1	
Network Fax Set	tting					OK	Cancel	
WebDAV Setting	IS					UK	Cancel	
OpenAPI Setting	I							
TCP Socket Sett	ing							
SSDP Setting								
IEEE802.1X Auth Setting	entication							

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Permit Access	To specify permitted addresses, select "Enable".	
Set 1 to 5	Specify permitted addresses. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255)	Permitted addresses
Deny Access	To specify denied addresses, select "Enable".	
Set 1 to 5	Specify denied addresses. (Format: "***.***.***", Range for ***: 0 to 255)	Denied addresses

Specifying settings for IPv6-based communication

To allocate the IPv6 address to this machine, use this setting. IPv6 can run simultaneously with IPv4. However, Ipv6 does not run independently.

When using this machine under the IPv6 environment, there are the following restrictions.

- Printing using SMB is not available (available for direct hosting service).
- Sending scan data using SMB is not available (available for direct hosting service).
- SMB browsing is not available.
- The NTLM authentication is not available (however, this can be made for the Direct Hosting service).
- DHCPv6 cannot be used.
- IP filtering is not available.
- The printer driver installer cannot be used.

PageScope Web Connection cannot be displayed with Flash.

Refer to the following for more information about Direct Hosting Service.

- "Sending scan data to a Windows computer" on page 1-21
- "Printing (SMB)" on page 1-65
- "Limiting users using this machine (Windows domain/workgroup)" on page 1-108



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "TCP/IP Setting".

Specify the following settings.

It Bit See Paywinks Tokk Tok       Tokat       Lagout       Image Seales         Image Seales       Packy Seales       Image Seales       Image Seales         Image Seales       Packy Seales       Image Seales       Image Seales       Image Seales         Image Seales       TCP/IP Seales       Image Seales	Metwork - Microsoft Internet Expl	orer				
Vertice Section     Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section						
Vertice Section     Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section   Vertice Section		Administrator			Logout ?	
		-				-
Security       Box       Print Secting       Sore Address       Metered         * CCMPR Seating       * Schled Cet alter reset.       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       *       * <td< th=""><th></th><th>~</th><th></th><th></th><th>4</th><th></th></td<>		~			4	
TCP/IP Setting       * is reflected after reset.         * IP Filtering       * is reflected after reset.         * IP Setting       * is reflected after reset.         * INP Setting       * is reflected after reset.         * INP Setting       * is reflected after reset.         * INP Setting       * is reflected after reset.         * INV Post Setting       * is reflected after reset.         * INV Post Setting       * is reflected.         * OpenAPI Setting       * is reflected.         * CP Sector Setting       Global Address         * Port 1       * 100       (146535)         * Port 2       112       (146535)         * Port 3       113       (146535)         * Port 6       116		In Menu (Admin Mode)			4	
• CPUP-Senting             • PFiltering             • PFiltering             • CPUP-Filtering             • CPUP-Senting             • CPUP-Sentise	Maintenance Security	Box P	int Setting Store	e Address	Network	
I P Flixed         I P Flixed         I Charles         E.mail Setting         I DAP Setting         I PP Setting         I PP Setting         SIMP Setting         S MB Setting         P Address         Source Settings         Bonjour Setting         Peterovic Settings         Bonjour Setting         Network Speed         Network Stating         Poperating         Network Fax Setting         Network Setting         Poperating         Network Fax Setting         OpenAPI Setting         Port 1         OpenAPI Setting         Port 2         Stor Setting         Port 3         OpenAPI Setting         Port 4         Port 3         Port 4         Port 4         Port 4         Port 5         Port 6         Port 8         Port 8         Port 9         Port 9         Port 9         Port 1         Port 1         Port 2         Port 3         Port 4	▼ TCP/IP Setting	TCP/IP Setting				
Pleac       I/Um to main switch OF, and to many any settings)         • Email Sorting       I/Um to main switch OF, and to many settings)         • IDP Setting       IP Address Setting Method*       Manual Setting *         • IPP Setting       IP Address Setting Method*       Manual Setting *         • SMB Setting       Subnet Mask       5252552400         • Boolor Setting       IP Address       0113253         • Num Setting       IP Address       1013253         • Subnet Mask       5252552400         • Boolor Setting       Default Gateway       1013251         • Network Fax Setting       Int-Local Address       1000 (146535)         • Vebox Kax Setting       Gateway Address       1012 (146535)         • Vebox Setting       Gateway Address       1010 (146535)         • Port 1       9100 (146535)       IP Port 2       112 (146535)         • Port 3       9113 (146535)       IP Port 3       9113 (146535)         • Port 4       9114 (146535)       IP Port 5       9115 (146535)         • Port 5       9115 (146535)       IP Port 5       9115 (146535)         • Port 5       9115 (146535)       IP Port 5       9115 (146535)         • Port 5       9115 (146535)       IP Port 5       9115 (146535)	► TCP/IP Setting	* is reflected after reset.				
▶ Prec       (Turn the man switch OF+, and then OH, when changing settings)         ▶ Chail Setting       Network Speed       Auto         > LDAP Setting       IP Address Setting Method*       Manual Setting         > PP Setting       IP Address Setting Method*       Manual Setting         > SMB Setting       IP Address       10 11 32 53         > Subnet Mask       255 255 240 (0)         Default Gateway       10 11 32 31         Bolgor Setting       IP Address         NetWare Setting       In IPS Setting*         NetWare Setting       In IPS Setting*         Pape Talk Setting       In IPS Setting*         Pape Talk Setting       Gateway         Clobal Address       SetSos3)         Yeron 1       1000	► IP Filtering		ON ×			
Lindri Setting Lindri Setting P Address Setting Method* P Setting P Address Setting Method* P Address P A	▶ IPsec			ging settings.)		
LDAP Setting       IP Address Setting Method*       Manual Setting Method*       Manual Setting Method*         IPP Setting       IP Address       ID HCP*       BootP*         IP Address       10 11 32 53       Submet Mask       25525 240 0         StMIS Setting       Default Gateway       10 11 32 1         Bonjour Setting       IP Address       10 11 32 1         Bonjour Setting       IP Address       10 11 32 1         HetWark Setting       Default Gateway       10 11 32 1         VebDAV Settings       Default Gateway       10 11 32 1         VebDAV Settings       Default Gateway       10 11 32 1         VebDAV Settings       Default Gateway       0 11 32 1         VebDAV Settings       Global Address       160:250 aaff 627:30         VebDAV Setting       Gateway Address       IP Address 1         SDP Setting       Gateway Address       IP 01 1         SEP Setting       Gateway Address       IP 02 1         VebDAV Setting       Pord 2       1112         VebDAV Setting       Diable W       IP 01 1         Veb 04 Setting       Diable W       IP 01 1         Veb 04 Setting       Diable M       IP 01 1         SDP Setting       Diable W       IP 01 1	E-mail Setting	Network Speed	Auto	~		
IPP Setting       □ DiCP*         FTP Setting       □ DicP*         SMB Setting       □ P Address         SMB Setting       Subnet Mask         Veb Service Settings       □ Defuil Gateway         IPF Address       □ 01 13 25 3         SMB Setting       □ 01 13 25 3         NetWare Setting       □ 01 13 25 1         IPF Address       □ 01 13 25 1         IPF Address       □ 01 13 25 1         NetWare Setting       □ 01 13 25 1         IPF Address       □ 01 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	-	IP Address Setting Method	Manual Setting	*		
FIP Setting       □ Address         SMB Setting       □ Address         Subservice Settings       □ Default Gateway         Bonjour Setting       □ P Address         NetWare Setting       □ Default Gateway         Apple Talk Setting       □ Default Gateway         NetWork Fax Setting       □ Default Gateway         OpenAPI Setting       □ Default Gateway         CIP Socket Settings       □ Default Gateway         OpenAPI Setting       □ Default Gateway         CIP Socket Settings       □ Default Gateway         Stop Setting       □ Default Gateway         Petro Number       □ Default Gateway         □ Port 1       1000         □ Port 3       1113         □ Port 3       1113         □ Port 4       1111         □ Port 5       1115         □ Port 6       1115         □ Port 6       1115         □ Port 7       1115         □ Port 8       1115         □ Port 9       1115         □ Port 1       1100         □ Port 3       1115         □ Port 4       1115         □ Port 5       1115         □ Port 6       1116         □ Port						
SIMP Setting       IP Address       10 11 32 53         Subset Mask       255 256 240 0         Bonjour Setting       IP Address         Bonjour Setting       IP Address         AppleTalk Setting       IP Address         NetWare Setting       IP Address         AppleTalk Setting       IP Address         VebDAV Setting       IP Address         OpenAPI Setting       Ink-Local Address         Prefix Length       Image: Setting         Stering       FP Address         Prefix Length       Image: Setting         Setting       FP Address         Prefix Length       Image: Setting         Setting       FP Address         Prefix Length       Image: Setting         Pron 2       Image: Setting         Dynamic DNS Setting       Image: Setting         Dynamic DNS Setting       Image: Setting         DNS Derauin Name: EDDTRG local       Image: Setting <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>						
SMB Setting       IP Address       10.11.32.53         Web Service Settings       Default Gateway       10.11.32.13         Banjour Setting       IPA6       ON ♥         Auto IPA6 Setting*       ON ♥         VebDAV Settings       IpAlefalk Setting         OpenAPI Setting       Global Address         Prefix Length			MutolP*			
Web Service Settings       Default Gateway       [0.11.32.1]         Perform Setting       Perform Setting*       ON         Auto IP-6 Setting*       ON       Image: Setting Setting Setting*         NetWare Setting       Global Address       fea0: 250 aaff fo27:30         Global Address       Profix Length       OpenAPI Setting         OpenAPI Setting       Gateway Address       Image: Setting Setting         SSDP Setting       RAW Port Number       Image: Setting Setting         Port 1       9100       (1-65535)         If Port 2       9112       (1-65535)         If Port 3       9113       (1-65535)         If Port 4       9114       (1-65535)         If Port 5       9115       (1-65535)         If Port 6       9116       (1-65535)         If No Somain Auto Obtain       Enable M       DNS Domain Name Setting         DNS Search Domain Name       DNS Search Domain Name       DNS Search Domain Name         DNS Search Auto Obtain       Enable M       Promay DNS Searer         DNS Searer Auto Obtain       Enable M	-	IP Address	10.11.32.53			
Bonjour Setting       Default Gateway       [10,11,32,1]         IPv6       ON N         AppleTalk Setting       Link-Local Address         NewbDAV Settings       fe80:250 aaff fe27:30         OpenAPI Setting       Global Address         OpenAPI Setting       Gateway Address         SSDP Setting       RAW Port Number         FEE802.1X Authentication       P Port 1         VP Dot 1       9100         VP T 2       9112         VI + 6535)       VP Port 1         VP Dot 1       9100         VP T 4       9114         VI + 6535)       VP Port 3         VP Ort 6       9116         VI + 6535)       VP Port 4         VP Ort 6       9116         VI + 6535)       VP Ort 6         VP Nort 6       9116         UNS Domain Name Setting       DNS Domain Name Setting         DNS Default Domain Name2       DNS Search Domain Name3         DNS Search Auto Obtain       Enable ♥         DNS Search Auto Obtain       Enable ♥         DNS Search Ourain Name3       DNS Search Ourain Name3         DNS Search Auto Obtain       Enable ♥         Primary DNS Searer1       10.016.31         Secondary DNS Seare		Subnet Mask				
NetWare Setting       UN       W         AppleTalk Setting       Unik-Local Address       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         Network Fax Setting       Global Address       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         OpenAPI Setting       Global Address       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         OpenAPI Setting       Gateway Address       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         SDD Setting       RAW Port Number       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         FEEB02.1X Authentication       Gateway Address       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         FEEB02.1X Authentication       Gateway Address       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         FEEB02.1X Authentication       Gateway Address       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         FEEB02.1X Authentication       Fort 1       9100       (14:6535)         V Port 3       9112       (14:6535)         V Port 4       9114       (14:6535)         V Port 5       9115       (1:6535)         V Port 6       9116       (1:6535)         Dynamic DNS Setting       Disable V       fe80: 250: aaff fe27: 30         DNS Domain Name Setting       DNS Search Domain Name 3       DNS Search Domain Name 3         DNS Search Domain Name3       DNS Search Domain Name3       DNS Search Domain Name3       DNS Search Domain Setting         DNS Searer Auto Obtai		Default Gateway	10.11.32.1			
AppleTalk Setting Hetwork Fax Setting WebDAV Settings OpenAPI Setting CICP Socket Setting SSDP Setting EEEE802.1X Authentication Setting DEEE802.1X Authentication Setting DEEE802.1X Authentication Setting DEEE802.1X Authentication DEEE802.1X Authentication DEEE802.1X Authentication DEEE802.1X Authentication DEEE802.1X Authentication DEEE802.1X Authentication DEEE802.1X Authentication DEEE802.1X Authentication DEE802.1X Authentication DE802.1X A						
Hetwork Fax Setting       fe80::250:adff627:30         Slobal Address       Prefix Length         TCP Socket Setting       Gateway Address         SSDP Setting       RAW Port Number         Image: Port 1       9100       (1-65535)         Image: Port 2       9112       (1-65535)         Image: Port 3       9113       (1-65535)         Image: Port 5       9115       (1-65535)         Image: Port 6       9116       (1-65535)         Image: Port 7       9115       (1-65535)         Image: Port 6       9116       (1-65535)         Image: Port 7       9116       (1-65535)         Image: Port 6       9116       (1-65535)         Image: Port 7       9116       (1-6535)         Image: Port 6       9116       (1-6535)         Image: Port 7	-	-	ON 👻			
WebDAV Settings       Global Address         Prefix Length         SDP Setting         SSDP Setting         EEE802.1X Authentication Setting         IP Ort 1         9 Optime         IF Port 2         9 Optime         IF Port 3         9 Optime         IF Port 1         9 Optime         IF Port 2         9 Optime         IF Port 3         9 Optime         IF Port 6         9 Optime         IF Port 7         IF Port 6         9 Optime         IF Port 6         9 Optime         IF Port 7         IF Port 6         9 Optime         IF Port 6         9 Optime         IF Port 7         IF Port 8         9 Optime         IF Port 8         9 Optime         IF Port 8         9 Optime         10 NS Sectime         10 Optime         10 Optime		LINK-LOCAL Address	fe80::250:aaff:fe2	27:30		
• OpenAPI Setting         • SDP Setting         • SSDP Setting         • EEE802.1X Authentication Setting         ····································		Global Address				
TCP Socket Setting         SSDP Setting         IFEE802.1X Authentication Setting         IP Ont 1       9100       (1.65535)         IP Ont 2       9112       (1.65535)         IP Ont 3       9113       (1.65535)         IP Ont 4       9114       (1.65535)         IP Ont 5       9115       (1.65535)         IP Ont 6       9116       (1.65535)         IP Not 8       IP Ont 1       IP Ont 1       IP Ont 1         INS Domain Name 8       IP Ont 1       IP Ont 1       IP Ont 1         INS Server Auto Obtain       In able IP       IP Ont 1       IP Ont 1         INS Server Auto Obtain       In able IP       IP Ont 1       IP Ont 1       IP Ont 1         SLP Setting		Prefix Length				
SSDP Setting         RAW Port Number         IFEE802.1X Authentication Setting         IF Port 1       9100         IF Port 2       9112         9 Port 3       9113         IF Port 3       9113         IF Port 3       9113         IF Port 4       9114         IF Port 5       9115         IF Port 6       9116         IF Port 7       9100         IF Port 6       9116         IF Port 7       9100         IF Port 6       9116         IF Port 6       9116         IF Port 6       9116         IF Port 6       9116         IF Port 7       9000         IF Port 8       9000         IF Port 9       9000						
▶ Port 1       9100       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 2       9112       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 3       9113       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 4       9114       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 5       9115       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 6       9116       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 6       9116       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 6       9116       (1-65535)         ▶ Port 7       0.16       9116         ● NS Domain Name Setting       0NS Domain Auto Obtain       Enable ♥         ● NS Default Domain Name       EDDTRG.local       0NS Search Domain Name2         ● NS Search Domain Name3       0NS Search Domain Name3       0NS Search Domain Name3         ● DNS Server Auto Obtain       Enable ♥       0.0.0         Secondary DNS Server1       10.0.16.31       secondary DNS Server2         ● SLP Setting       SLP       Enable ♥         LPD       Enable ♥						
Setting       IP Pot 2       9112       (1-6535)         IP Pot 3       9113       (1-6535)         IP Pot 4       9114       (1-6535)         IP Pot 5       9115       (1-6535)         IP Pot 6       9116       (1-6535)         IP Pot 6       9116       (1-6535)         IP Pot 6       9116       (1-6535)         IP Pot 7       Disable V       V         Host Name       IMP270030       Importance         DNS Domain Name Setting       Importance       Importance         DNS Domain Name Setting       Importance       Importance         DNS Search Domain Name1       Importance       Importance         DNS Server Setting       Importance       Importance         DNS Server Setting       Importance       Importance         DNS Server Auto Obtain       Enable V       Importance         Primary DNS Server 1       10.0.16.30       Importance         SLP Setting       Importance       Importance         LPD       Enable V       Importance			9100 // 0	25525		
Image: Port 3 9113 (1-65536)   Image: Port 4 9114 (1-65536)   Image: Port 5 9115 (1-65535)   Image: Port 6 9116 (1-65535)   Image: Port 7 10-165535)   Image: Port 7 10.16.31   Image: Port 7 10.16.31   Image: SLP Image: Port 7   Image: Port 7 10.16.31   Image: SLP Image: Port 7   Image: Port 7 10.16.31   Image: Port 7 10.16.31 <td< th=""><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></td<>						
Image: Port 4 9114 (1-65535)   Image: Port 5 9115 (1-65535)   Image: Port 6 9116 (1-65535)   Dynamic DNS Setting Disable ✓   Host Name ImfP270030   DNS Domain Name Setting DNS Domain Auto Obtain   DNS Domain Auto Obtain Enable ✓   DNS Default Domain Name 2 DNS Search Domain Name3   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Obtain   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Search 2000   DNS Search Search 2000 0.0.0   SLP Setting LPD Enable ✓			````			
Image: Port 5 9115 (1-65536)   Image: Port 6 9116 (1-65536)   Dynamic DNS Setting Disable w   Host Name Image: MFP270030   DNS Domain Name Setting DNS Domain Name Setting   DNS Domain Auto Obtain Enable w   DNS Default Domain Name EDDTRG local   DNS Search Domain Name2 DNS Search Domain Name3   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Setting   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Setting   DNS Search Setting DNS Search 100.16.30   Secondary DNS Server1 100.16.31   Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0   SLP Setting LPD Enable w			```````````````````````````````````````			
Image: Port 6 9116 (1-65536)   Dynamic DNS Setting Disable w   Host Name ImfP270030   DNS Domain Name Setting DNS Domain Auto Obtain   DNS Default Domain Name EDDTRG local   DNS Search Domain Name2 DNS Search Domain Name3   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Search Obtain   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Search Obtain   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Search Obtain   DNS Search Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Search Search Search Obtain   DNS Search						
Dynamic DNS Setting Disable ▼   Host Name MFP270030   DNS Domain Name Setting DNS Domain Auto Obtain   DNS Default Domain Name EDDTRG.local   DNS Search Domain Name2 DNS Search Domain Name3   DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Search Obtain   DNS Server Setting DNS Server Auto Obtain   DNS Server Setting DNS Server 10.0.16.30   Secondary DNS Server1 10.0.16.31   Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0						
DNS Domain Name Setting   DNS Default Domain Name   DNS Search Domain Name1   DNS Search Domain Name2   DNS Search Domain Name3   DNS Search Domain Name3   DNS Server Setting   DNS Server Auto Obtain   Primary DNS Server   10.0.16.30   Secondary DNS Server2   0.0.0     SLP Setting   LPD Setting		Dynamic DNS Setting		,		
DNS Domain Auto Obtain Enable ▼   DNS Default Domain Name EDDTRG.local   DNS Search Domain Name1		Host Name	MFP270030			
DNS Default Domain Name EDDTRG.local DNS Search Domain Name1 DNS Search Domain Name2 DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable  Primary DNS Server 100.016.30 Secondary DNS Server1 100.16.31 Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0  SLP Setting LPD Enable  LPD Setting						
DNS Search Domain Name1 DNS Search Domain Name2 DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Server Setting DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable  Primary DNS Server 10.0.16.30 Secondary DNS Server1 10.0.16.31 Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0  SLP Setting LPD Enable  LPD Setting						
DNS Search Domain Name2 DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Server Setting DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable  Primary DNS Server 10.0.16.30 Secondary DNS Server1 10.0.16.31 Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0 SLP Setting SLP Enable  LPD Setting LPD Enable						
DNS Search Domain Name3 DNS Server Setting DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable  Primary DNS Server 10.0.16.30 Secondary DNS Server1 10.0.16.31 Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0 SLP Setting SLP Enable  LPD Setting LPD Enable						
DNS Server Setting DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable Primary DNS Server 10.0.16.30 Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0 SLP Setting SLP Enable LPD Enable LPD Enable LPD Enable						
DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable  Primary DNS Server 10.0.16.30 Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0 SLP Setting SLP Enable  LPD Enable  Enable			inieo			
Secondary DNS Server1 10.0.16.31 Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0  SLP Setting SLP Enable  LPD Enable  Enable			Enable 💌			
Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0  SLP Setting SLP LPD Setting LPD Enable		Primary DNS Server	10.0.16.30			
SLP Setting SLP LPD Setting LPD Enable		Secondary DNS Server	10.0.16.31			
SLP Enable V LPD Setting LPD Enable V		Secondary DNS Server	0.0.0.0			
SLP Enable V LPD Setting LPD Enable V						
LPD Setting LPD Enable V						
LPD Enable V		SLP	Enable N			
LPD Enable V		LPD Setting				
OK Canad		-	Enable N	1		
OK Canad						
OK Cancel				OK	Cancel	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP/IP	Select "ON".	
IPv6	Select "ON".	
Auto IPv6 Setting	To automatically obtain the IPv6 address, select "ON".	Whether to automatically obtain the IPv6 address
Link-Local Address	Displays the link-local address generated from the MAC address.	
Global Address	When not automatically obtain the IPv6 address, specify the IPv6 global address.	IPv6 address
Prefix Length	When not automatically obtain the IPv6 address, specify the IPv6 global address prefix length.	Prefix length
Gateway Address	When not automatically obtain the IPv6 address, specify the IPv6 gateway address.	Gateway address

# Q

#### Detail

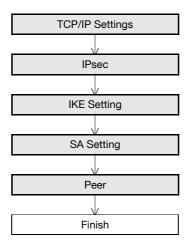
If necessary, specify settings for DNS. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IPbased communication" on page 1-2.



Specify settings for IPsec-based communication

Communicating using IPsec prevents falsification and disclosure of data by IP packet. This function ensure safer communication even if transport or application that does not support encryption is used

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.

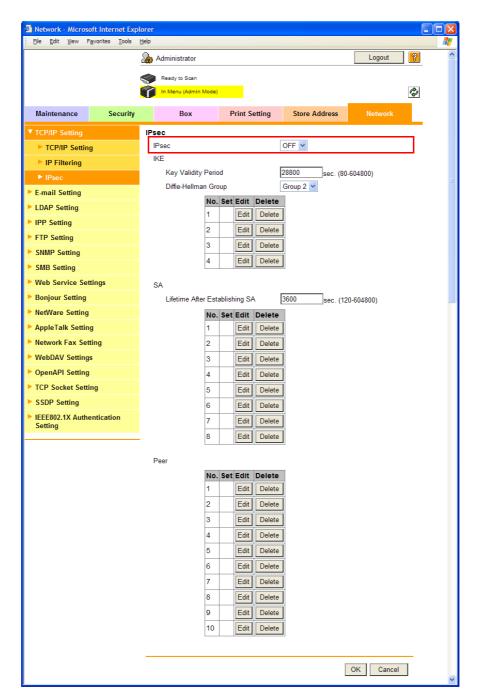


#### 1.42.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.42.2 IPsec

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "IPsec". Specify the following setting.



Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
IPsec	Select "ON".	



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "IPsec" - "IKE" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings. (Up to four groups can be registered in "IKE".)

http://localhost/network_dialog	.xml - Microsoft Internet Explorer	
IKE Setting		
No.	1	
Encryption Algorithm	OFF 🖌	
Authentication Algorithm	OFF 💌	
	OK	Cancel

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Key Validity Period	Specify the validity period of a key generated when creating a control tunnel.	
Diffie-Hellman Group	Select "Diffie-Hellman Group".	
Encryption Algorithm	Select the encryption algorithm to be used when creating a control tunnel.	
Authentication Algorithm	Select the authentication algorithm to be used when creating a control tunnel.	

### 1.42.4 SA Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "IPsec" - "SA" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings. (Up to eight groups can be registered in "SA".)

🗿 http://localhost/network_dialog.xml - Microsoft Internet Explorer 👘 🔲 🗖						
SA Setting						
No.	1					
Security Protocol	OFF 🖌					
ESP Encryption Algorithm	OFF					
ESP Authentication Algorithm	OFF 🗸					
AH Authentication Algorithm	OFF 🗸					
	OK Cancel					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Lifetime After Establish- ing SA	Specify the validity period of a key generated when creating a communication tunnel.	
Security Protocol	Select the security protocol.	
ESP Encryption Algo- rithm	When "ESP" is selected for "Security Protocol", specify the ESP encryption algorithm.	
ESP Authentication Al- gorithm	When "ESP" is selected for "Security Protocol", specify the ESP authentication algorithm.	
AH Authentication Algo- rithm	When "AH" is selected for "Security Protocol", specify the AH authentication algorithm.	

### 1.42.5 Peer

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP/IP Setting" - "IPsec" - "Peer" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings. (Up to 10 peers can be registered in "Peer".)

http://localhost/network_dialog.xml	Microsoft Internet E	xplorer 📃 🗖 🔀
Peer		
No.	1	
Perfect Forward Secrecy	OFF 🛩	
Peer		
Pre-Shared Key Text		
Encapsulation Mode	OFF 💌	
		OK Cancel

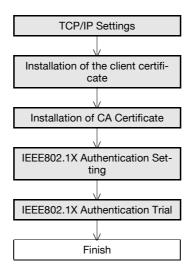
Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Perfect Forward Secrecy	To increase the IKE strength, select "ON".	
Peer	Specify the IP address of the peer.	IP address of the peer
Pre-Shared Key Text	Specify the Pre-Shared Key text shared with the peer.	
Encapsulation Mode	Specify the operation mode of IPsec.	

# 1.43 Authentication of IEEE802.1X

When this machine is used in the cable LAN environment into which the IEEE802.1X authentication is introduced, make settings of the supplicants (authenticated clients) of this machine.

Making the IEEE802.1X authentication allows you to restrict the connection to the LAN environment of equipment other than those permitted by the administrator. Be sure to make settings of this machine in compliance with the environment in which the machine is use.

Refer to the flowchart shown below for settings.



#### 1.43.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.43.2 Installation of the client certificate

Install the client certificate of this machine according to the EAP authentication method to be used.

- When EAP-Type is [EAP-TLS], the installation of the client certificate is indispensable.
- When EAP-Type is [EAP-TTLS] or [PEAP], the client certificate is required to be installed depending on how the machine is used.

For details of the installation of the client certificate, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

-

# 1.43.3 Installation of CA Certificate

When conducting a CA reliability check on the server certificate, install the CA certificate in this machine.

In the administrator mode of the PageScope Web Connection, select the [Security] tab - [Installation of CA Certificate] to make the following settings.

Security - Microsoft Internet Exp	lorer				
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin M	lode)		4	Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	_
Authentication	Installation of CA	Certificates			
User Registration			~		
Account Track Registration					
SSL/TLS Setting					
Installation of CA Certificates					
Address Reference Setting			*		
Permission of Address Change				OK Cancel	
Auto Logout					
<ul> <li>Administrator Password Setting</li> </ul>					
	_				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Installation of CA Certifi- cate	Paste the route CA certificate (PEM format). This is used for the CA reliability check of the server certificate.	

In the administrator mode of the PageScope Web Connection, select the [Network] tab - [IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting]-[IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting] to make the following settings.

Metwork - Microsoft Internet Exp	lorer				
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help				
	🌆 Administrator			Logout	2
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				¢
					**
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	IEEE802.1X Authentic	ation Setting			
E-mail Setting	Authentication		Disabled		Refresh
LDAP Setting	Status	L			
► IPP Setting	* is reflected after rese				
► FTP Setting	IEEE802.1X Authentic	ation Setting*	ON 👻		
SNMP Setting	User ID				
SMB Setting	Password				
<ul> <li>Web Service Settings</li> </ul>	EAP-Type EAP-TTLS Internal Aut	hontication	OFF 👻		
<ul> <li>Bonjour Setting</li> </ul>	User ID	mentication	anonymous		
, ,	Protocol		MSCHAPv2 V		
NetWare Setting	Encryption Strength		Low 🗸		
AppleTalk Setting	Verify Server Certificat	ion			
Network Fax Setting	Validity Period		Verify 💙		
WebDAV Settings	CA Reliability		Do Not Verify 🗸		
OpenAPI Setting	Server ID		Do Not Verify 🖌		
TCP Socket Setting	Server ID				
SSDP Setting	CA Certificates (To install, access Sec		Not installed.		
▼ IEEE802.1X Authentication	Client Certificates	uniy installation of	OFF V		
Setting			Installed.		
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting	Network Stop Time	e*			
► IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial	Stop Time*		0sec.(30-255)		
			Г	OK Cancel	
			L	outouter	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Authentication Status	<ul> <li>The state of authentication is displayed.</li> <li>Authenticated: Displayed when authenticated.</li> <li>Authenticating: Displayed when being authenticated.</li> <li>Disabled: Displayed when not authenticated.</li> <li>Authentication Failure: Displayed when authentication failed.</li> <li>Pressing [Refresh] updates the current state of authentication.</li> </ul>	
IEEE802.1X Authentication Set- ting	Select [ON].	
User ID	Enter a user ID (up to 128 alphanumeric characters). The user ID is used by all of the EAP-Types.	
Password	Enter a password (up to 128 alphanumeric characters). The password is used by EAP-Type other than [EAP- TLS].	
EAP-Type	Select the EAP authentication method. When [Depend on Server] is selected, authentication is made by EAP-Type provided by the authentication server. In compliance with EAP-Type provided by the authen- tication server, make settings of supplicants required by this machine. Avoid setting to [OFF].	EAP authentication method

Item		Definition	Prior confirmation
EAP-TTLS In- ternal Authenti- cation	User ID	Enter an anonymous name to be used for authentica- tion of EAP-TTLS (up to 128 alphanumeric characters). When EAP-Type is [EAP-TTLS] or [Depend on Server], a setting can be made.	
	Protocol	Select the internal authentication protocol of EAP- TTLS. When EAP-Type is [EAP-TTLS] or [Depend on Server], a setting can be made.	
Encryption Stren	gth	<ul> <li>Select the encryption strength when a cypher communication is made in TLS.</li> <li>Low : Communication is made in all key lengths.</li> <li>Mid : Communication is made in key lengths exceeding 56 bits.</li> <li>High : Communication is made in key lengths exceeding 128 bits.</li> <li>When [OFF] or other than [EAP-MD5] is selected for EAP-Type, a setting can be made.</li> </ul>	
Verify Server Certification	Validity Pe- riod	A selection is made to see if the server certificate is val- id or not.	
CA Reliabili- ty		A selection is made to see if there is nothing abnormal with the chain (certification pass) of the server certificate. A checking of the chain is made by reference to the route CA certificate registered on this machine. For details, refer to "Installation of CA Certificate" on page 1-132.	
	Server ID	A selection is made to decide whether or not the com- mon name (CN) of the server certificate coincides with the address of the server. When the CN is checked, make a setting of [Server ID].	
Server ID		Enter the server ID (up to 64 alphanumeric characters). This setting is required when the CN of the server cer- tificate is checked.	Is the CN of the server certificate checked ?
CA Certificates		An indication is made to see if the route CA certificate is installed. When the CA reliability of the server certificate is checked, this is required to be installed. For details of the method for installation, refer to "In- stallation of CA Certificate" on page 1-132.	Is the CA reliability of the server certificate checked?
Client Certificates		Use the client certificate of this machine to make a se- lection to decide whether or not the authentication in- formation is encrypted. When the client certificate is installed in this machine, a setting can be made. When [EAP-TLS] is selected for EAP-Type, the client certificate is indispensable. When EAP-Type is [EAP-TTLS] or [PEAP], a setting can also be made.	
Network Stop Tir	ne	When authentication is not completed successfully within a specified period of time after the start of au- thentication, all the network communications are stopped. When a respite time is set from the start of authentica- tion until the stop of the network communication, make a check in.	
Stop Time		Set a respite time (in seconds) from the start of authen- tication until the stop of the network communication. If you want to make authentication again after the stop of the network communication, turn on the main power of this machine again after turning it off.	

In the administrator mode of the PageScope Web Connection, select the [Network] tab - [IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting] - [IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial].

Network - Microsoft Internet Expl	olorer	
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help	<b>*</b>
	Administrator	<u> </u>
	Ready to Scan	
	👔 In Menu (Admin Mode)	1
Maintenance Security		-
,	Box Print Setting Store Address Network	-
TCP/IP Setting	IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial	
E-mail Setting	Authentication Disabled Ref	fresh
LDAP Setting		
IPP Setting		
FTP Setting	Authentication Trial	
SNMP Setting		
SMB Setting		
Web Service Settings		
Bonjour Setting		
NetWare Setting		
AppleTalk Setting		
Network Fax Setting		
WebDAV Settings		
OpenAPI Setting		
TCP Socket Setting		
SSDP Setting		
<ul> <li>IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting</li> </ul>		
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting		
IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial		
	-	

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Authentication Status	<ul> <li>The state of authentication is displayed.</li> <li>Authenticated: Displayed when authenticated.</li> <li>Authenticating: Displayed when being authenticated.</li> <li>Disabled: Displayed when not authenticated.</li> <li>Authentication Failure: Displayed when authentication failed.</li> <li>Pressing [Refresh] updates the current state of authentication.</li> </ul>	
Authentication Trial	The trial of authentication is conducted at once.	

# 1.44 Using the TCP Socket/OpenAPI function

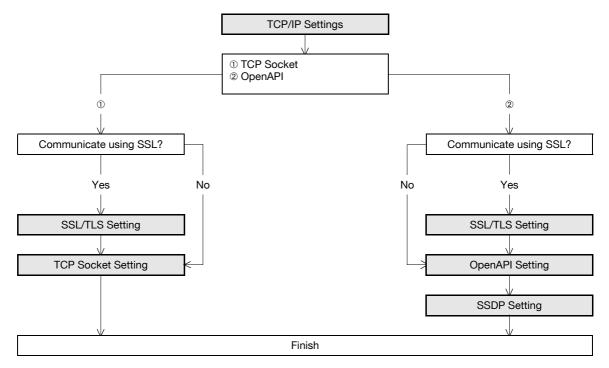
Specify settings for TCP Socket and OpenAPI of this machine.

TCP socket is used during data transmissions between the computer application and this machine.

To synchronize this machine with a different OpenAPI-based system, specify settings for OpenAPI.

Authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, make settings of SSL/TLS before enabling the SSL/TLS settings of the TCP Socket and OpenAPI.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



## 1.44.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

# 1.44.2 SSL/TLS Setting

Specify settings for SSL-based communication.

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

## 1.44.3 TCP Socket Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "TCP Socket Setting". Specify the following settings.



# Detail

To use SSL/TLS, install the certificate in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

Eile <u>E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew	F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help						
		& 4	Administrator				Logout	2
			Ready to Scan					
			In Menu (Admin Mode)					Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	1	Box	Prin	t Setting	Store Address		
TCP/IP Setting		TCP	Socket Setting					
E-mail Setting				F, and th	ien ON, whe	en changing TCP Socket.	)	
LDAP Setting		I.	TCP Socket Port Number			59158 (1-65535)		
IPP Setting		г	Use SSL/TLS			59158 (1-65535)		
FTP Setting			Port No.(SSL)			59159 (1-65535)		
SNMP Setting		L.	TCP Socket(ASCI	Mode)		(100000)		
SMB Setting			Port No.(ASCII Mo			59160 (1-65535)		
Web Service Se	ttings	_						
Bonjour Setting						ſ	OK Cance	el
NetWare Setting	3					-		
AppleTalk Setting	ng							
Network Fax Se	tting							
WebDAV Setting	gs							
OpenAPI Setting	9							
TCP Socket Set	ting							
SSDP Setting								
IEEE802.1X Auth Setting	entication							

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
TCP Socket	Select the "TCP Socket" check box.	
Port Number	Specify the port number.	
Use SSL/TLS	To use SSL/TLS, select the "Use SSL/TLS" check box.	Whether to use SSL/TLS
Port No. (SSL)	Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	

# Q

# Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", the "Use SSL/TLS" check box is selected.



In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "OpenAPI Setting". Specify the following settings.



# **Detail**

To use SSL/TLS, install the certificate in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools</u>	Help				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	OpenAPI				
E-mail Setting	Port Number		50001 (1-65535)		
LDAP Setting	Use SSL/TLS				
IPP Setting	Port No.(SSL)		50003 (1-65535)		
FTP Setting					_
SNMP Setting				OK Cancel	
SMB Setting					
Web Service Settings					
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
Network Fax Setting					
WebDAV Settings					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setting					
SSDP Setting					
<ul> <li>IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting</li> </ul>					

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
Port Number	Specify the port number.	
Use SSL/TLS	To use SSL/TLS, select the "Use SSL/TLS" check box.	Use SSL/TLS?
Port No. (SSL)	Specify the port number used in SSL communication.	

# Q

Detail

When the security enhancement setting is turned on, [Use SSL/TLS] is set to "Enable".

When authentication is made from the printer driver with the PageScope Authentication Manager, Set [Authentication] of the OpenAPI Setting to [OFF] on the operation panel.



When OpenAPI is used, SSDP is required to be enabled.

In the administrator mode of the PageScope Web Connection, select the [Network] tab - [SSDP Setting] to make the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Expl				
Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help			
	Administrator			Logout ?
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			¢
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting	* is reflected after reset.			
E-mail Setting	SSDP Setting*	C	DN 🗸	
LDAP Setting	Multicast TTL Setting	1		
IPP Setting		L.		
FTP Setting				OK Cancel
SNMP Setting				on our our our our
SMB Setting				
Web Service Settings				
Bonjour Setting				
NetWare Setting				
AppleTalk Setting				
Network Fax Setting				
WebDAV Settings				
OpenAPI Setting				
TCP Socket Setting				
SSDP Setting				
<ul> <li>IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting</li> </ul>				

Item	Definition	Prior confirmation
SSDP Setting	Select [ON].	
Multicast TTL Setting	Set the TTL value of the SSDP multi-cast.	

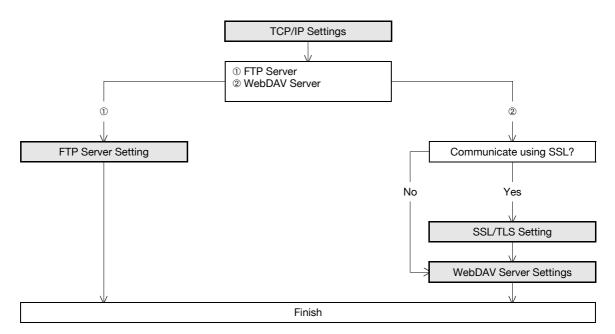
# 1.45 Using FTP server/WebDAV server functions

Specify settings for FTP server and WebDAV server of this machine.

This machine serves as an FTP server or WebDAV server by specifying the following settings. To use an application that synchronizes with this machine as an FTP or WebDAV client, specify these settings.

By using this machine as an WebDAV server, communication with application software can be encrypted using SSL and safer communication is enabled.

Specify the settings according to the following flowchart.



### 1.45.1 TCP/IP Settings

Specify settings to use this machine in a TCP/IP network environment. For details, refer to "Specifying general settings for TCP/IP-based communication" on page 1-2.

#### 1.45.2 SSL/TLS Setting

Specify settings for SSL-based communication.

For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

## 1.45.3 FTP Server Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "FTP Setting" - "FTP Server Setting".

Specify the following settings.

Network - Microsoft Internet Exp Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help				
	Administrator			Logout 💡	
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			Ċ	
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
TCP/IP Setting	FTP Server				
E-mail Setting	FTP Server	C	IN 🛩		
LDAP Setting					
IPP Setting				OK Cancel	
FTP Setting					
FTP TX Setting					
FTP Server Setting					
SNMP Setting					
SMB Setting					
Web Service Settings					
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting					
AppleTalk Setting					
Network Fax Setting					
WebDAV Settings					
OpenAPI Setting					
TCP Socket Setting					
SSDP Setting					
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting					

Item	Description	Prior confirmation
FTP Server	Select "ON".	

Q Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to enable, "OFF" is selected.

# 1.45.4 WebDAV Server Settings

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Network tab - "WebDAV Settings" - "WebDAV Server Settings".

Specify the following settings.

# Q Detail

To use SSL/TLS, install the certificate in advance. For details, refer to "Creating a certificate for this machine for SSL-based communication" on page 1-8.

Network - Micros		lorer Help			
		Administrator			Logout
		Ready to Scan			
		In Menu (Admin Mode)	)		Co Co
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
TCP/IP Setting		WebDAV Server Set	tings		
E-mail Setting		WebDAV Settings		ON 🕶	
LDAP Setting		SSL Setting		Non-SSL Only 💙	
IPP Setting		Access Rights Settin Password	gs		_
FTP Setting		Fassworu		Initial Password	
SNMP Setting				Initial Password	
SMB Setting					
Web Service Se	ettings				OK Cancel
Bonjour Setting					
NetWare Setting	9				
AppleTalk Setti	ng				
Network Fax Se	tting				
WebDAV Setting	gs				
WebDAV Clip	ent Settings				
▶ WebDAV Se	rver Settings				
OpenAPI Settin	g				
TCP Socket Set	ting				
SSDP Setting					
IEEE802.1X Auth Setting	nentication				

Item	Description	Prior confirmation
WebDAV Settings	Select "ON".	
SSL Setting	To use SSL/TLS, select "SSL Only" or "SSL/Non-SSL".	Use SSL/TLS?
Password	Specify the password for connecting to the WebDAV server.	
[Initial Password]	The specified password can be initialized. Default: sysadm	



# **1.46** Other items on the Maintenance tab

This section describes other items specifiable on the Maintenance tab for the PageScope Web Connection.

#### 1.46.1 Using external memory

Specify settings for using external memory on this machine.

Connecting external memory to the USB port of this machine front part allows sending scanned data to external memory and printing data in external memory.

Ø...

#### Note

An image controller and a hard disk are optionally required to print the data in the external memory.

```
☜...
```

#### Reminder

Do not pull out the external memory while a document is being saved to the external memory or being printed.

#### **External Memory Function Settings**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "External Memory Function Settings".

Specify the following settings.

🚰 Maintenance - Mi	icrosoft Internet	t Explo	orer						_	
j Ejle Edit View F	F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help								
		، 🔬	Administrator					Logout	2	
			Ready to Scan							
			In Menu (Admin Mode)						¢	
Maintenance	Security		Box	Prin	t Setting	Store	Address	Network		
Meter Count		Ext	ernal Memory Fur	nction	Settings					
ROM Version		S	ave Document				ON 🔽			
Import/Export		P	rint Document				ON 💌			
Status Notification	on Setting	-							_	
Total Counter No Setting	otification							OK Cancel		
Machine Setting										
Online Assistance	e									
Date/Time Setting	ıg									
Timer Setting										
Reset										
External Memory Settings	y Function									
Header/Footer R	egistration									
License Settings										
		-								

Item	Definition
Save Document	To send scanned data to external memory, select "ON". To prevent data from being stolen, "OFF" is specified as default. To use an external mem- ory, select "ON".
Print Document	To print data in external memory, select "ON".

# **1.46.2** Using the timer function

Specify settings for the timer function of this machine.

Settings for the power save function and weekly timer function can be specified.

#### **Power Save Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Timer Setting" - "Power Save Setting".

Specify the following settings.

<u>File Edit View Favorites Too</u>	ls <u>H</u> elp				
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Me	ode)			Ŷ
Maintenance Secur	ity Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count	Power Save Setti	ng			
ROM Version	Low Power Mode	Setting	15 Minute (1-24	0)	
Import/Export	Sleep Mode Settin	ig	15 Minute (1-24	0)	
Status Notification Setting	Power Save Key		Low Power		
<ul> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> </ul>			C Sleep		
Machine Setting				OK Cancel	1
Online Assistance					-
Date/Time Setting					
▼ Timer Setting					
Power Save Setting					
Weekly Timer Setting					
Reset					
<ul> <li>External Memory Function Settings</li> </ul>					
Header/Footer Registration					
License Settings					

Item	Definition
Low Power Mode Set- ting	Specify the time period before the machine enters Low Power mode.
Sleep Mode Setting	Specify the time period before the machine enters Sleep mode.
Power Save Key	Manually specify the setting for the power save function (Low Power or Sleep mode).

#### **Weekly Timer Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Timer Setting" - "Weekly Timer Setting".

Specify the following settings.

		Administrator				Logout	2
		Ready to Scan					
		In Menu (Admin Mode	.)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store #	ddress	Network	
Meter Count		Weekly Timer Settir	Ig				
ROM Version		Use Weekly Time	T				
Import/Export		Date Setting					
Status Notification	n Setting		2008 💟 December	V Se	etting		
<ul> <li>Total Counter Not Setting</li> </ul>	tification	Work Time Setti	ng ON Time		OFF Tin	ne	
Machine Setting		🗖 Sun	0 🛛		0	= 0	
Online Assistance	•	□ Mon	0 🛛 🕁 0		0	□ 0	
Date/Time Setting	9	Tue Tue	0 🛛 🕁 0		0	□ 0	
Timer Setting		🔽 Wed	18 🗆 🗆 0	-	19	□ 5	
Power Save S	etting	🗖 Thu	0 0	-	0	= 0	
Weekly Timer	Setting	🗖 Fri	0 0	-	0		
Reset		🗖 Sat	0 0	-	0		
External Memory Settings	Function	Use Power Save	Power Save Start Tim	_	Dowor 9	Save End Time	
Header/Footer Re	gistration			-   _	13		
License Settings		✓ Use Overtime Pas					
					[	OK Cancel	

Item	Definition
Use Weekly Timer	To use the weekly timer function, select this check box, and then specify the operating date and time. To display the screen for specifying dates, click [Setting]. Weekly setting and daily settings are possible.
Use Power Save	To use the power save function, select this check box, and then specify the starting and ending times for power saving
Use Overtime Password	To use the non-business hours password function, select this check box, and then specify the password.

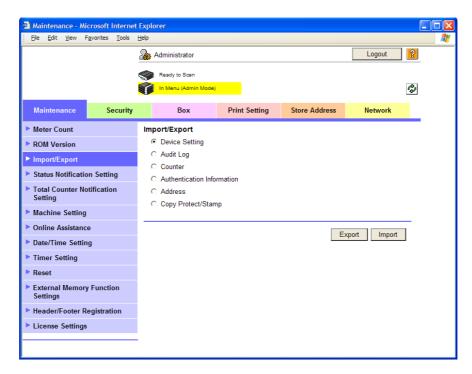
## 1.46.3 Importing or exporting setting information

Import or export setting information of this machine.

Machine settings can be saved (exported) from this machine to the computer, or can be written from the computer to the machine (imported).

#### Import/Export

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Import/Export". Specify the following settings.



Item	Definition
Device Setting	Imports or exports device settings.
Audit Log	Exports the audit log information.
Counter	Exports the counter information.
Authentication Informa- tion	All the authentication data can be backed up and restored. And the user registration information and the authentication data can also be imported and exported. When the authentication device is used optionally on this machine, the authentication data can be imported and exported. When the authentication information is exported, a password can be set if necessary. An authenticated password is required when the authentication information is imported. When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager, this item is not displayed.
Address	All the address data can be backed up and restored. And each of the address information can also be imported and exported. When the address information is exported, a password can be set if necessary. A set password is required when the address information is imported.
Copy Protect/Stamp	Patterns and stamp data can be imported and exported.

# Q

#### Detail

Exported files cannot be edited.

When E-mail destinations with certificates are exported and imported, the certificate information must be registered again after importing.

"Audit Log" and "Counter" are available only for exporting.

501/421/361

When importing or exporting authentication data, operate user registration information in the same way. Operate the authentication data after operate the user authentication information.

"Audit Log" is available when audit log setting is enabled on this machine.

#### 1.46.4 Resetting setting information

#### Reset machine settings.

Network settings, controller settings, and remote address settings can be reset.

#### **Network Setting Clear**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Reset" - "Network Setting Clear".

To reset to the factory default network settings, click [Clear].

## Q Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", this menu item does not appear.

Eile Edit View F	<u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				¢
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count		Network Setting Clea	ar			
ROM Version		Network setting is retu	rned to the factory de	efaults.		1
Import/Export					Clear	
Status Notification	n Setting					-
Total Counter No Setting	tification					
Machine Setting						
Online Assistanc	e					
Date/Time Settin	g					
Timer Setting						
▼ Reset						
Network Setti	ng Clear					
Reset						
Format All De	stination					
External Memory Settings	Function					
Header/Footer R	egistration					
License Settings						

-

#### Reset

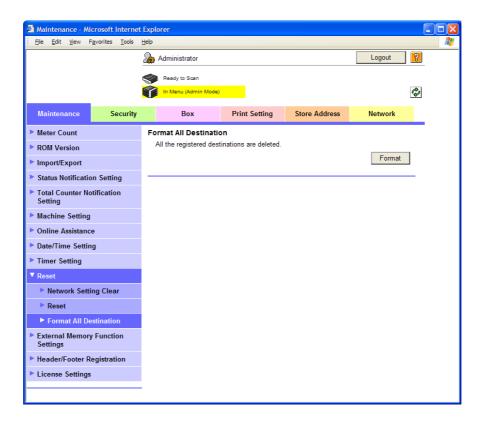
In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Reset" - "Reset". To reset the controller, click [Reset].

Anintenance - Mi Ele Edit View F		Explo Help	rer				
: Die East New P	-avorites Tools		Administrator			Logout	2
		<u> </u>	Ready to Scan				_
		Å	In Menu (Admin Mode)			C.	6
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count		Res					-
ROM Version		С	ontroller is reset.				
Import/Export						Reset	
Status Notification	on Setting						
Total Counter No Setting	otification						
Machine Setting							
Online Assistance	e						
Date/Time Setting	ıg						
Timer Setting							
▼ Reset							
Network Setti	ing Clear						
► Reset							
Format All De							
External Memory Settings	y Function						
Header/Footer R	egistration						
License Settings							
		•					
j.							

#### Format All Destination

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Reset" - "Format All Destination".

To delete all destinations registered on the machine, click [Format].



# 1.46.5 Specifying support information

Specify the support information for the machine.

#### **Online Assistance**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Online Assistance". Specify the following settings.

Maintenance - Microsoft Inte     Eile Edit View Favorites To		lorer					
	2	Administrator				Logout	?
		Ready to Scan					
		In Menu (Admin Mode)					C.
Maintenance Secu	rity	Box	Print Setting	9	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count	0	nline Assistance					
ROM Version		Contact Name		KC	NICA MINOLTA Cus	tomer Sup	
Import/Export		Contact Information					
Status Notification Setting		Product Help URL		htt	p://pagescope.com		
Total Counter Notification		Corporate URL		htt	p://konicaminolta.com	n	
Setting		Supplies and Access	ories				
Machine Setting		Online Help URL					
Online Assistance		Driver URL					
Date/Time Setting							
Timer Setting					[	OK Cancel	
Reset							
External Memory Function Settings							
Header/Footer Registration							
License Settings							

Item	Definition
Contact Name	Specify the contact name for the machine (up to 63 characters).
Contact Information	Specify contact name information for the machine such as the phone number or URL (up to 127 characters).
Product Help URL	Specify the URL of the Web page for product information (up to 127 characters).
Corporate URL	Specify the URL of the Web page for corporate (up to 127 characters).
Supplies and Accesso- ries	Specify consumables supplier information (up to 127 characters).
Online Help URL	Specify the online help URL (up to 127 characters).
Driver URL	Specify the driver storage location (up to 127 characters).



To make copies on this machine, register a text that can be printed as a header or footer.

#### Header/Footer Registration

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "Header/Footer Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Maintenance - M Eile Edit View		Help				
		Administrator			Logout	🥐
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				¢
	<b>0</b> 1	-	<b>D 1</b> + 0 + 4	a		
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count		Header/Footer Regist				
ROM Version		No.	,	1		
Import/Export		Name		sample_01		
Status Notificati	on Setting	Pages		All Pages 🗸		
Total Counter N	otification	Size		10pt 🛩		
Setting		Date/Time Setting Date Type	ſ	Jan 23, 2007 🗸		
Machine Setting	1	Time Type		None V		
Online Assistance	e	Distribution Number	l			
Date/Time Settin	na	Text	1			
Timer Setting	5	Output Method		Number only	~	
Reset		Start Number Speci	fication	1 (1-9999	99999)	
External Memor	v Function	Header			,	
Settings	yFunction	Header String	[			
• Header/Footer F	Registration	Date/Time Setting		Print 💌		
License Settings	;	Distribution Number		Print 💌		
		Job Number		Print 🗸		
		Serial Number		Print 🗸		
		User Name/Account	Name	Print 💌		
		Print Position		Top Left 🔽		
		Footer				
		Footer String	[			
		Date/Time Setting	[	Do Not Print 💌		
		Distribution Number	[	Do Not Print 💌		
		Job Number	[	Do Not Print 💌		
		Serial Number		Do Not Print 💌		
		User Name/Account	Name	Do Not Print 💌		
		Print Position		Bottom Left 💌		
				I	OK Cancel	
				l	52.1001	

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Specify the registration name.
Pages	Select the pages to be printed.
Size	Specify the size.
Date/Time Setting	Specify the date and time formats.
Distribution Number	Specify the distribution number text. Select the output format, and then specify the start- ing number.
Header/Footer	Specify whether to print the following items. <ul> <li>Header String/Footer String (up to 40 characters each)</li> <li>Date/Time Setting</li> <li>Distribution Number</li> <li>Job Number</li> <li>Serial Number</li> <li>User Name/Account Name</li> <li>Print Position</li> </ul>

# 1.46.7 Checking the ROM version

Check the ROM version of this machine.

#### **ROM Version**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - ROM Version. Check the ROM version of this machine.

Maintenance - Microsoft Internet	Explorer Help				
	Administrator     Ready to Scan     In Menu (Admin Mode)			Logout	2 2
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
<ul> <li>Meter Count</li> <li>ROM Version</li> <li>Import/Export</li> <li>Status Notification Setting</li> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> <li>Machine Setting</li> <li>Machine Setting</li> <li>Online Assistance</li> <li>Date/Time Setting</li> <li>Timer Setting</li> <li>Reset</li> <li>External Memory Function Settings</li> <li>Header/Footer Registration</li> <li>License Settings</li> </ul>	ROM Version MFP Controller Operation Panel Mess Fax Board Controller1 Fax Board Controller2 Image Controller ADF Loadable Device Driver Finisher BIOS	-	201201		



A request code can be issued and license can be installed.



**Detail** For details on acquiring a license code and installing the license, refer to the Quick Guide [Copy/Print/Fax/Scan/Box Operations].

#### **Get Request Code**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "License Settings" - "Get Request Code".

Click the [OK] button, and the request code is issued.

# Q Detail

When the optional hard disk is not installed, this menu is not displayed.

Aaintenance - Microsoft Internet	Fuelence				ſ
	Help				U
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			4	e la
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count	Get Request Code				
ROM Version	Do you want to get a F	Request Code?			
Import/Export					
Status Notification Setting				OK	
<ul> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> </ul>					
Machine Setting					
Online Assistance					
Date/Time Setting					
Timer Setting					
Reset					
<ul> <li>External Memory Function Settings</li> </ul>					
Header/Footer Registration					
▼ License Settings					
Get Request Code					
· Get Request Code					

#### Install License

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Maintenance tab - "License Settings" - "Install License".

Specify the following settings.

# Q Detail

If the optional upgrade kit and the optional hard disk are not installed, this menu item does not appear.

<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools</u>	Help				0
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ç
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Meter Count	Install License				
ROM Version	Functions already ena	abled and registered			
Import/Export	LK-101		Not Registered V		
Status Notification Setting	LK-102		Register V		
<ul> <li>Total Counter Notification Setting</li> </ul>	Enter the 30-digit Lice	anco Codo (no hunh			-
Machine Setting	License Code	inse code (no nyph	ens).	7	
Online Assistance		L			
Date/Time Setting				OK Cancel	
Timer Setting					
Reset					
<ul> <li>External Memory Function Settings</li> </ul>					
Header/Footer Registration					
License Settings					
Get Request Code					
Install License					

Item	Description
LK-101/102/103	Select a function to be enabled, and then select "Registered".
License Code	Enter the acquired license code without using hyphens.
[OK]	Enables the function.

# 1.47 Other items on the Security tab

This section describes other items specifiable on the Security tab for the PageScope Web Connection.

#### 1.47.1 Limiting accessible destinations by user

Register reference allowed groups and specify whether to allow reference to public users.

Specifying the reference allowed group and the access allowed level for destinations to be registered limits destinations to be displayed on an accessing user basis at the time of user authentication or logging in to public mode.

Q	

Detail

For details on limiting access to destinations, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].

When registering a user, specify groups accessible to the user and reference allowed level. For details, refer to "User Registration" on page 1-101.

Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination to be registered when registering an address book destination and reference allowed level. For details, refer to "Registering or editing an address book destination" on page 1-168.

#### **Reference Allowed Group Registration**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Address Reference Setting" - "Reference Allowed Group Registration" - [Edit].

Specify the following settings.

Bile       Edit       Yew       Fayorites       Tools       Help         Image: Security       Ready to Scan       Image: Security       Image: Securi
Maintenance       Security       Box       Print Setting       Store Address       Network         Authentication       Reference Allowed Group Registration       I       I       I         User Registration       No.       I       I       I
Maintenance       Security       Box       Print Setting       Store Address       Network         Authentication       Reference Allowed Group Registration       No.       1
Maintenance         Security         Box         Print Setting         Store Address         Network           Authentication         Reference Allowed Group Registration         No.         1
Authentication         Reference Allowed Group Registration           User Registration         No.
▶ User Registration 1
P User Registration
Account Track Registration
SSL/TLS Setting
Installation of CA Certificates     OK Cancel
▼ Address Reference Setting
► Reference Allowed Group Registration
Public User Reference     Setting
Permission of Address Change
Auto Logout
Administrator Password Setting

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number.
Reference Allowed Group Name	Specify the reference allowed group name (up to 24 characters).
Access Allowed Level	Specify the access allowed level for the group.

#### **Public User Reference Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Address Reference Setting" - "Public User Reference Setting".

Specify the destination access right of public users. When "Reference Allowed Group" is selected, click [Search from List], and then select a reference allowed group from the list. When "Access Allowed Level" is selected, specify a level.

Security - Micros	oft Internet Ex	olorer				
Eile Edit View F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				a <b>b</b> _
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				C.
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication		Public User Referen	ce Setting			
User Registration	n	Limiting Access to Des				
Account Track R	egistration	Reference Allowe	ed Group	Search from List		
SSL/TLS Setting			l	Search from List		
Installation of CA	A Certificates		1	Registered Reference Gr	oup Number	
Address Referen	ce Setting					
Reference All Registration	lowed Group	Access Allowed	Level	V	Total0	
Public User R Setting	eference		[	0 🛩		
Permission of Ac Change	ldress			[	OK Cancel	-
Auto Logout						
Administrator Pa Setting	ssword					

#### 1.47.2 Restricting address registration by a user

Restrict address registration or change by a general user.

#### Permission of Address Change

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Permission of Address Change".

Specify the following setting.

Security - Microsoft Internet Exp	olorer	
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help	
	Administrator Logout ?	
	Ready to Scan	
	in Menu (Admin Mode)	
Maintenance Security	Box Print Setting Store Address Network	
Authentication	Restrict User Access	
User Registration	Registering and Changing Addresses Allow	
Account Track Registration		
SSL/TLS Setting	OK Cancel	
Installation of CA Certificates		
Address Reference Setting		
<ul> <li>Permission of Address Change</li> </ul>		
Auto Logout		
	-	

Item	Definition
Registering and Chang- ing Addresses	Select "Restrict". If "Restrict" is selected, this menu item is not displayed on the Store Address tab in the user mode.

# Q Detail

If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", "Restrict" is specified.

# 1.47.3 Specifying the auto logout time

Specify the length of time before Administrator mode or User mode is automatically logged out.

If no operation is performed for the length of time specified here, the user will automatically be logged out.

#### Auto Logout

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Auto Logout". Specify the following settings.

🚳 Security - Microsoft Interne	et Explore	۲				
<u> </u>	<u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp	)				-
	2	Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Sec	urity	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	A	uto Logout				
User Registration		Admin. Mode Logout	Time	10 V Minute		
Account Track Registration	n	User Mode Logout Tir	ne	60 🚩 Minute		
SSL/TLS Setting	-					
Installation of CA Certifica	ites				OK Cancel	
Address Reference Setting	9					
Permission of Address Change						
► Auto Logout						
Administrator Password Setting						

Item	Definition
Admin. Mode Logout Time	Specify the time period before the user is automatically logged out when no operation is performed for a certain period of time in Administrator mode.
User Mode Logout Time	Specify the time period before the user is automatically logged out when no operation is performed for a certain period of time in the user mode.

-



Specify the password for the machine's administrator.

#### **Administrator Password Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Security tab - "Administrator Password Setting".

Specify the following settings.



If Enhanced Security Mode is set to "ON", this menu item does not appear.

If the certificate for this machine is not installed, this menu item does not appear.

Security - Microsoft Internet Expl Ele Edit View Favorites Tools					
	Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Authentication	Administrator Passwo	rd Setting			
User Registration	Administrator Password			]	
Account Track Registration	Retype Administrator Pa	assword		]	
SSL/TLS Setting					_
Installation of CA Certificates			[	OK Cancel	
Address Reference Setting					
<ul> <li>Permission of Address</li> <li>Change</li> </ul>					
Auto Logout					
Administrator Password					

Item	Definition
Administrator Password	Specify the administrator password (up to 8 characters).
Retype Administrator Password	Enter the administrator password again for confirmation.

# Q

#### Detail

If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].

# **1.48** Box tab settings

This section describes other items specifiable on the Box tab for the PageScope Web Connection.

From the Box tab, user boxes can be created and basic user box information can be viewed.

☜.

Note

For details on the box function, refer to the User's Guide [Box Operations].

#### **1.48.1** Changing user box settings or deleting a user box

Change created user box settings or delete a user box.

# Q

#### Detail

In Administrator mode, user box settings can be changed and a user box can be deleted without entering the user box password. In the user mode, files in the box can be operated. For details, refer to the User's Guide [Box Operations].

#### **Open User Box**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab - "Open User Box". Specify the following settings.

🗿 Bo	ox - Mi	croso	ft Intern	et Explo	rer								-	
Eile	Edit	⊻iew	F <u>a</u> vorite:	s <u>T</u> ools	Help									
					2	Administrator						Logout	?	
						Ready to Scan								
						Ready to Print							Ŷ	
м	laintei	nance		Securi	iy	Box	Print S	etting	Ste	ore Address		Network		
▶ 0	pen U	ser Bo	х			User Box Number 1		User Bo> Name	×	box1				
► C	reate	User E	Box			Түре Ри	blic	Owner N	ame	Public				
▶ 0	pen S	ystem	User Be	x		Box Operation	User E	Box Setting		Delete User	Box			
► C	reate	Syster	m User E	Box										
-												Cancel	1	
													-	

Item	Definition
[User Box Setting]	Changes the user box settings.
[Delete User Box]	Deletes the user box.

User Box Setting

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).
Index	Specify the indexing characters.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
User Box Expansion Function is changed.	To add the confidential reception function to the user box, specify the password (up to 8 characters). This setting appears when the optional fax kit is installed.
User Box Password is changed.	To change the user box password, select the check box. Specify the current password and the new password (up to 8 characters).
User Box Owner is changed.	When the box owner is changed, make a check in and select a box type. When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager and a log-in is made in the administrator mode with the shared box selected, this item is not displayed.



Create a new user box.



Public user boxes can be created only, and they cannot be changed in Administrator mode. For details on creating a user box, refer to the User's Guide [Box Operations].

#### **Create User Box**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab - "Create User Box".

Specify the following settings.

Ele Edit View Favorites Iools E	jeb Administrator Ready to Scan In Menu (Admin Mode) Box			Logout	?
Maintenance Security	Ready to Scan				?
Maintenance Security	In Menu (Admin Mode)			ſ	
Maintenance Security				1	
Maintenance Security	Box			-	¢
		Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Open User Box	Create User Box(Pub	lic)			
Create User Box	Box is the function to save Documents in the Box can				
Open System User Box	User Box Number		<i></i>		
Create System User Box	<ul> <li>Use opening</li> </ul>	number			
	C Input directly	[	(1-9999	999999)	
	User Box Name	[			
	Use Box Passwor	d			
	User Box Passwo	rd [			
	Retype User Box I	Password			
	Index				
	Specify a keyword f	or Box search and displa			
		L	ABC 😽		
	Type Auto Delete Document		Public		
	Do Not Delete				
	C Specify days	Γ	1 day 🗸		
	C Specify Time	Ē	min.(5-720)		
	User Box Expansion F	unction	Display		
				OK Cancel	_

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Select the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Index	Specify the indexing characters.
Туре	Specify the user box type. Public user boxes can be created only, and they cannot be changed in Administrator mode.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
User Box Expansion Function	To add the confidential reception function to the user box, specify the password (up to 8 characters). This setting appears when the optional fax kit is installed.

#### ∜ Detail

If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].

## 1.48.3 Changing system box settings or deleting system boxes

Change the settings for created system boxes (bulletin board User box, relay user box, and annotation user box) or delete the boxes.



#### Detail

If the optional FAX kit is installed, "Bulletin Board User Box" and "Relay User Box" are selectable.

If the optional hard disk is installed, "Annotation User Box" is selectable.

#### **Open System User Box**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab - "Open System User Box".

Specify the following settings. (The screen when "Bulletin Board User Box" is selected)

Ede       Yew       Favorites       Logout       Yes         Administrator       Logout       Yes       Logout       Yes         Ready to Scan       Frint Setting       Store Address       Network         Maintenance       Security       Box       Print Setting       Store Address       Network         Open User Box       User Box Number 3       User Box Name       Kbox1       Type       Public       Owmer Name       Public         Open System User Box       Box Operation       User Box Setting       Delete User Box       Cancel	🚰 Box - Microsoft Internet Explore	r					
Maintenance       Security       Box       Print Setting       Store Address       Network         Open User Box       User Box Number 3       User Box Kbox1         Open System User Box       Type       Public       Owner Name       Public         Open System User Box       Box Operation       User Box Setting       Delete User Box	<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools</u>	Help					
Maintenance     Security     Box     Print Setting     Store Address     Network       • Open User Box     User Box Number 3     User Box Name     kbox1       • Create User Box     Type     Public     Owmer Name     Public       • Open System User Box     Example     User Box Setting     Delete User Box		🌆 Administrator			Logout	?	
Maintenance     Security     Box     Print Setting     Store Address     Network       > Open User Box     User Box Number 3     User Box Name     kbox1       > Create User Box     Type     Public     Owner Name     Public       > Open System User Box     Example     User Box Setting     Delete User Box		Ready to Scan					
<ul> <li>&gt; Open User Box</li> <li>&gt; Create User Box</li> <li>&gt; Open System User Box</li> <li>&gt; Open System User Box</li> <li>&gt; Create System User Box</li> </ul>		Ready to Print				Ŷ	
Create User Box     User Box Number 3     Name     kbox1       Type     Public     Owner Name     Public       Open System User Box     Box Operation     User Box Setting     Delete User Box	Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
Create User Box Type Public Owner Name Public Owner Name Public Box Operation User Box Setting Delete User Box	► Open User Box	User Box Number 3		ox kbox1			
Open System User Box     Box Operation     User Box Setting     Delete User Box	Create User Box	Type Pu		Name Public			
	Open System User Box		User Box Settir	ng Delete User	Box		
Cancel	Create System User Box						
Caricer		_			Canaal	1	
					Cancer		

Item	Definition
[User Box Setting]	Changes the user box settings. When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager and a log-in is made in the administrator mode with the personal user box selected, this item is not dis- played.
[Delete User Box]	Deletes the user box. When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager and a log-in is made in the administrator mode with the personal user box selected, this item is not dis- played.

"Bulletin Board User Box" settings

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
User Box Password is changed.	Change the user box password (up to 8 characters).
User Box Owner is changed.	To change the user box owner, select this check box, and then specify the box type. When authentication is made with the PageScope Authentication Manager and a log-in is made in the administrator mode with the public user box selected, this item is not dis- played.

#### "Relay User Box" settings

Item	Definition	
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.	
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).	
Relay Address	Specify the relay address.	
Relay TX Password is changed.	To change the relay user box password, select the check box. Specify the current pass- word and the new password (up to 8 characters).	

#### "Annotation User Box" settings

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Displays the user box number.
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
Change User Box Pass- word	Change the user box password.
Change Count Up	To change the counting method, select the check box, and then specify the counting method. If the user box contains documents, the setting cannot be specified.
Change Stamp Elements	To change the text, select the check box, and then specify settings for "Primary field", "Secondary Field", "Date/Time", "Print Position", "Density", and "Number Type".

### 1.48.4 Creating a new system user box

Create a new system user box.



#### Detail

If the optional FAX kit is installed, "Bulletin Board User Box" and "Relay User Box" are selectable.

#### **Create System User Box**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Box tab - "Create System User Box". Specify the following settings. (The screen when "Bulletin Board User Box" is selected)

🖹 Box - Microsoft Ir		1					
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites	Tools	Help				
			Administrator			Logout	?
			Ready to Scan				
			In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Se	curity	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Open User Box			Create System Use	r Box (Bulletin Bo	oard)		
Create User Box			User Box Number				
Open System Us	er Box		<ul> <li>Use opening</li> </ul>				
Create System U			<ul> <li>Input directly</li> </ul>		(1-999	999999)	
oreate system o	JOCT DOX						
			User Box Name				
			Use Box Passwo				
			User Box Passwo	ord			
			Retype User Box	Password			
			Type		Public		
			Auto Delete Documen	t			
			O Not Delete				
			C Specify days		1 day 💙		
			C Specify Time		min.(5-720)		
						OK Cancel	]
					_		

#### When "Bulletin Board User Box" is selected

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Specify the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Туре	Specify the user box type. Public user boxes can be created only, and they cannot be changed in Administrator mode.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.

When "Relay User Box" is selected

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Specify the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Relay Address	Specify the relay address.
Relay TX Password	Specify the relay TX password (up to 8 characters).
Retype Relay TX Pass- word	Type in the relay TX password again.

When "Annotation User Box" is selected

Item	Definition
User Box Number	Specify the registration number of the box to be created ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
User Box Name	Specify the user box name (up to 20 characters). To specify the user box password, select the "Use Box Password" check box, and then specify the password (up to 8 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the period during which data in the user box is saved.
Count Up	Select the counting method. If the user box contains documents, the setting cannot be specified.
Stamp Elements	Specify settings for "Primary Field", "Secondary Field", "Date/Time Setting", "Print Position", "Density", and "Number Type"

# Q Detail

If "Password Rules" is enabled, no password containing less than eight characters can be registered. If you have already registered a user password containing less than eight characters, change it to one using eight characters before enabling "Password Rules". For details on the password rules, refer to the User's Guide [Copy Operations].



This section describes other items specifiable on the Print Setting tab for the PageScope Web Connection. On the Print Setting tab, specify settings for the print function of this machine.

☜.

Note

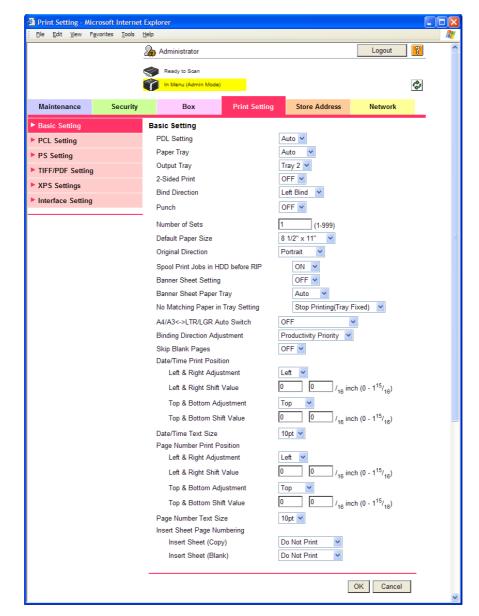
For details on the print function, refer to the User's Guide [Print Operations (IC-207)].

#### **1.49.1** Specifying initial settings for the print function

Specify initial settings for the print function.

#### **Basic Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab - "Basic Setting". Specify the following settings.



Item	Definition
PDL Setting	Specify the PDL language.
Paper Tray	Specify the paper tray.

Item	Definition	
Output Tray	Specify the output tray.	
2-Sided Print	Specify whether to perform 2-sided print.	
Bind Direction	Specify the binding direction.	
Staple	Specify whether to perform staple. If yes, specify the number of staples.	
Punch	Specify whether to perform punch.	
Number of Sets	Specifies the number of copies to be printed.	
Default Paper Size	Specifies the paper size.	
Original Direction	Select the original direction.	
Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	Select whether to spool a print job to HDD.	
Banner Sheet Setting	Specify whether to print the first page on the banner page.	
Banner Sheet Paper Tray	Select the default paper tray used for printing the banner pages.	
No Matching Paper in Tray Setting	Specify whether to continue printing from a different paper tray when there is no paper of the appropriate size in the specified paper tray.	
A4/A3←→LTR/LGR Auto Switch	Select whether to print an A4 (Letter)/A3 (Ledger) original in the same size with disre to image missing when the Letter (A4)/Ledger (A3) paper tray is selected.	
Binding Direction Adjust- ment	Specify the binding direction adjustment method.	
Skip Blank Pages	A setting is made to decide whether or not the "Skip Blank Pages" is activated. When ac- tivated, pages with no printing data are not printed.	
Date/Time Print Position	The print position of the Date/Time is set.	
Date/Time Text Size	The text size of the Date/Time is set.	
Page Number Print Posi- tion	The print position of the Page Number is set.	
Page Number Text Size	The text size of the Page Number is set.	
Insert Sheet Page Num- bering	A setting is made to decide whether or not the page number is printed on the Cover and the Insert sheet.	

# Q

### Detail

The staple function is available only if the optional finisher is installed.

The punch function is available only if the optional finisher and punch kit are installed.

## 1.49.2 Specifying settings for PCL/PS/XPS print

Specify settings for PCL/PS/XPS print

#### **PCL Settings**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab - "PCL Setting". Specify the following settings.

Print Setting - Microsoft Internet Eile Edit View Favorites Tools	Help			
	Administrator			Logout
	Ready to Scan			
	In Menu (Admin Mode)			
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network
Basic Setting	PCL Setting			
PCL Setting	Symbol Set	Roma	n-8 🗸	•
PS Setting	Typeface			
TIFF/PDF Setting	Resident Font	Courie	.r	~
XPS Settings	C Download Font Font Size			
Interface Setting	Scalable Font	12.00	Point (4.00-999	.75)
	Bitmap Font	10.00	Pitch (0.44-99.	99)
	Line/Page	60	(5-128)	
	CR/LF Mapping	OFF		*
			Г	OK Cancel

Item	Definition
Symbol Set	Specify the symbol set.
Typeface	Select the internal font ("Resident Font") or downloaded font ("Download Font").
Font Size	Specify the font size.
Line/Page	Specify the number of lines per page.
CR/LF Mapping	Specify the text data CR/LF replacement method.

#### **PS Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab - "PS Setting". Specify the following settings.

Print Setting - Micr	osoft Interne	t Explo	orer							
Eile Edit View Fav	vorites <u>T</u> ools	Help								
		<b>2</b>	Administrator					Logout	?	
		9	Ready to Scan							
			In Menu (Admin Mode)						¢.	
Maintenance	Security		Box	Prir	t Setting	S	tore Address	Network		
Basic Setting		PS	Setting							
PCL Setting		F	S Error Print		(	OFF	*			
PS Setting		-								
► TIFF/PDF Setting								OK Cancel	I	
XPS Settings										
Interface Setting										
		-								
										_

Item	Definition
PS Error Print	Specify whether to print error message when an error occurs during PS rasterization.

#### **TIFF/PDF Setting**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab - "TIFF/PDF Setting". Specify the following settings.

<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)			[	Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Basic Setting		TIFF/PDF Setting				
PCL Setting		Auto Paper Select	(	DN 🔽		
PS Setting						_
TIFF/PDF Setting				[	OK Cancel	
XPS Settings						
Interface Setting						

Item	Definition
Auto Paper Select	While in the TIFF/PDF direct print, a setting is made to decide whether or not the Auto Paper Select is employed.

#### **XPS Settings**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab - "XPS Settings".

Note

The display of the XPS Settings is available only when a hard disk is optionally installed.

Specify the following settings.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help					
		2 <b>6</b> 0 /	Administrator			Logout	?
		<b></b>	Ready to Scan				
			In Menu (Admin Mode)			<i>d</i>	Ŷ
Maintenance	Security		Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Basic Setting		XPS	S Settings				
PCL Setting		V	erify XPS Digital Sigr	nature	OFF 💌		
PS Setting		P	rint XPS Errors		ON 🔽		
TIFF/PDF Setting	I	-					-
XPS Settings						OK Cancel	
Interface Setting							

Item	Definition
Verify XPS Digital Signa- ture	Specify whether to verify digital signature. When "ON" is selected, the document without a valid digital signature is not printed.
Print XPS Errors	Specify whether to print error message when an error occurs during XPS print.

## 1.49.3 Specifying the interface timeout

Specify the time period before the interfaced connection times out.

#### Interface Setting

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Print Setting tab - "Interface Setting". Specify the following settings.

🕘 Print Setting - Mi	crosoft Interne	t Explorer				
Eile Edit View F	avorites <u>T</u> ools	Help				
		Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		In Menu (Admin Mode)				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
Basic Setting		Interface Setting				
PCL Setting		Network Timeout	60	sec. (10-1000)		
PS Setting		USB Timeout	60	sec. (10-1000)		
TIFF/PDF Setting	1					_
XPS Settings					OK Cancel	
Interface Setting						

Item	Definition
Network Timeout	Specify the reception timeout for the network.
USB Timeout	Specify the USB timeout.

# 1.50 Store Address tab settings

From the Store Address tab, transmission destinations and user box destinations for saving data can be registered and their settings can be changed.



#### Detail

When users are permitted to register addresses, address registration and modification are available in the User mode as well. For details on settings whether or not to permit address registration by users, refer to "Restricting address registration by a user" on page 1-155.

#### 1.50.1 Registering or editing an address book destination

Register a new address book, change address book settings, or register the icon.

Register destinations in the address book in advance, and then they are selectable when sending. Also, an icon can be registered to a registered address book.

#### Address Book

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Address Book". Specify the following settings.

🚳 Store Address - M	licrosoft Inte	net Explo	orer								
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F	avorites Tools	Help									
		2 🖧 A	dministrato	r				L	ogout	?	
		9	Ready to Sca	n							
			In Menu (Adn	nin Mode)						Ŷ	
Maintenance	Securi	у	Box	Prir	nt Setting	Store A	dress	Ne	twork		
▼ Address Book		Add	ress Bool	( List							
Store Address		The	other party w	ho wants to trans	smit data can t	be registered					
► Icon			New Regis	tration							
► Group					Search I	by number.	1-{	50	Go		
Program					Search	from Index		~	Go		
Temporary One-	Touch	No.	Function	Name			S/MIME	Edit	Delete		
Subject		1	E-mail	mail1				Edit	Delete		
► Text		2	FTP	ftp1				Edit	Delete		
► Prefix/Suffix		3	SMB	smb1				Edit	Delete		
Header Information	ion	4	User Box	box1				Edit	Delete		
		5	Fax	fax1				Edit	Delete		
										_	

Item	Definition
[New Registration]	Registers a new destination in the address book.
Search from Number	Select a range of registration numbers, and then click [Go] to display the list of destina- tions of the selected number.
Search from Index	Select the search text, and then click [Go] to display the list of destinations of the selected texts.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Function	Displays functions for which addresses were registered.
Name	Displays registered names.
S/MIME	Shows whether or not a certificate is attached to the E-mail destination.
[Edit]	Edits the registered address. The settings are the same as ones available during registra- tion.
[Delete]	Deletes the address from the address book.

#### When "E-mail" was selected using [New Registration]

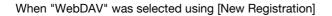
Item	Definition		
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").		
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).		
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.		
E-mail Address	Enter the address for the destination (up to 320 characters).		
Registration of Certifica- tion Information	Select this check box to register certificate information. Select the "Registration of Certification Information" check box. Click [Browse], and then specify the certificate information. Only files in the DER (Distinguished Encoding Rules) format are supported for certificate information. To delete the certificate informa- tion, select "Deletion of Certification Information". If the E-Mail address to be registered does not match the E-Mail address of the certificate, the certificate cannot be registered. Confirm whether both E-Mail addresses match, and then register the certificate.		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		

When "FTP" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition		
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").		
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).		
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.		
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the FTP server of the destination. f the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name (up to 63 characters).		
File Path	Specify the directory of the destination (up to 96 characters).		
User ID	Type in the user ID for logging in to the FTP server of the destination (up to 47 characters).		
Password	Type in the password for logging in to the FTP server of the destination (up to 31 characters).		
anonymous	Specify whether even an anonymous user can access the destination.		
PASV Mode	Register whether to make communication in the PASV mode.		
Proxy	Specifies whether or not a proxy server is used.		
Port Number	Specify the port number to be used.		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		

When "SMB" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition		
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").		
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).		
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.		
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the computer of the destination. If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name (up to 255 characters).		
File Path	Specify the directory of the destination (up to 85 characters).		
User ID	Type in the user ID for logging in to the computer of the destination (up to 127 characters).		
Password	Type in the password for logging in to the computer of the destination (up to 127 charac- ters).		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		



Item	Definition		
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").		
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).		
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.		
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the WebDAV server of the destination. If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name (up to 255 characters).		
File Path	Specify the directory of the destination (up to 47 characters).		
User ID	Type in the user ID for logging in to the WebDAV server of the destination (up to 21 characters).		
Password	Type in the password for logging in to the WebDAV server of the destination (up to 63 characters).		
SSL Settings	Specify whether perform encryption using SSL.		
Proxy	Specifies whether or not a proxy server is used.		
Port No.	Specify the port number to be used.		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		

When "User Box" was selected using [New Registration]

Item	Definition
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.
User Box No.	Specify the user box number of the destination.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

When "Fax" was selected using [New Registration]

# Q

Detail

Appears if the optional fax kit has been installed.

Item	Definition		
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").		
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).		
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.		
Destination	Enter the fax number for the destination (up to 38 characters).		
Confirm Fax Number	In order to prevent a fax number from being incorrectly registered, enter again the fax number. This item is displayed only when [Confirm Address (Register)] is set to [ON] on the control panel.		
Line Setting	Specify the line to be used. This item is enabled if the optional fax multi line is installed.		
Communication Setting	Click [Display], and then select the check box for the displayed item ("V34 off", "ECM Off", "International Communication" or "Check Dest. & Send").		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		

When "IP Address Fax" was selected using [New Registration]



The display is made only when the use of the IP Address Fax Function is available.

Item	Definition		
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").		
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).		
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.		
Host Address	Specify the IP address of the fax of the destination. If the DNS server is specified, the address can be specified using the host name.		
Port No.	Specify the port number to be used.		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		

When "Internet Fax" was selected using [New Registration]

# Q Detail

This window appears if the Internet fax function is available.

Item	Definition		
No.	Specify the registration number ("Use opening number" or "Direct Input").		
Name	Type in the address name (up to 24 characters).		
Index	Specify the index characters for the destination. To normally display the destination in the control panel, select the "Main" check box.		
E-mail Address	Enter the address for the destination (up to 320 characters).		
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.		
Paper Size	Specifies the paper size.		
Compression Type	Specify the compression method.		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		

#### Icon

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Address Book" - "Icon" - "Edit".

Specify the following settings.

Store Address - Micro File Edit View Favorite		net Explorer Help				
		🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				¢
Maintenance	Securit	v	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	*
▼ Address Book		Register Photo/Ico	n			
Store Address		No. Name	1 tes	-4		
► Icon		<ul> <li>Name</li> <li>Specify Icon</li> </ul>	18:	51		
► Group				Search from List	1	
Program			_	T	•	
Temporary One-Tou	ch		Re	gistered icon		
Subject			1			
► Text				<u> </u>		
Prefix/Suffix				-		
Header Information						_
					OK Cancel	

Item	Description	
No.	The registration number of the address book appears.	
Name	The registered name of the address book appears.	
Specify Icon	Select "Specify Icon".	
[Search from List]	The icon list appears. Select an icon to be registered.	

## 1.50.2 Registering or editing a group destination

Register a new group destination or change group destination settings.

Register multiple addresses as a group destination by grouping. To broadcast the fax, use this function. To register addresses in a group, they must be registered in the address book in advance.

#### Group

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Group". Specify the following settings.

		- Micros			olorer					l
<u>File Edi</u>	t <u>V</u> iew	Favorites	Tools	Help						
				2	Administrator			Logout	?	
					Ready to Scan					
					Ready to Print				Ŷ	
Main	tenance		Securi	ty	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
► Addr	ess Bool	k		Gi	oup List					
► Grou	5				It is possible to register in the group address by making two or more shortening addresses					
► Prog	am			lt i	a group. It is necessary to register to the shortening address to register in the group address in					
		ne-Touc	h	ac	lvance.					
► Subje					New Registration					
						Search	from Number	1-50 🔽 Go		
► Text					lo. Name			Edit Delete		
▶ Prefix/Suffix			-					1		
► Head	er Infor	nation		Ľ	group01			Edit Delete	I	
				_						
				_					_	
										-

Item	Definition
[New Registration]	Registers a new group destination.
Search from Number	Select a range of registration numbers, and then click [Go] to display the list of destina- tions of the selected number.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Displays registered names.
[Edit]	Edits the registered group destination. The settings are the same as ones available during registration.
[Delete]	Deletes the group destination.

New Registration

Item	Definition		
Name	Enter the group name (up to 24 characters).		
Scan/Fax Address	Select the scan/fax address to be grouped. Select addresses to be grouped from the list of registered addresses.		
User Box	Select the user boxes to be grouped. Select addresses to be grouped from the list of reg- istered addresses.		
[Check Destination]	Checks registered destinations.		
Specify Icon	Specify the icon of a user to be registered from [Search from List].		
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.		

## **1.50.3** Registering or editing a program destination

Register a new group destination or change program destination settings.

Program destinations can be registered by combining address information, communication information, and original information.

#### **Program address**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Program". Specify the following settings.

Store Address - Microsoft In Edit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vorites <u>T</u> ool				
	🌆 Adminis	trator		Logout
	Keady to	Scan		
	Ready to	Print		4
Maintenance Secu	rity	Box Print Setting	Store Address	Network
Address Book	Program I	List		
Group		e to register by combining the a ation setting.	ddress, the reading setting,	and the
Program	PAGE1	-	Displaγs 12 at a time)	PAGE1 🔽 Go
Temporary One-Touch				nge Page Name
Subject	No. Nam	e	Edit	Delete
lext .	1 progr	am01	Edit	Delete
Prefix/Suffix	2		Regi	stration Delete
leader Information	3		Regi	stration Delete
	4		Regi	stration Delete
	5		Regi	stration Delete
	6		Regi	stration Delete
	7		Regi	stration Delete
	8		Regi	stration Delete
	9		Regi	stration Delete
	10		Regi	stration Delete
	11		Regi	stration Delete
	12		Regi	stration Delete

Item	Definition
Page (Display 12 at a time)	Select the page, and then click [Go] to display the list of destinations of the selected page.
[Change Page Name]	Renames the page.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Displays registered names.
S/MIME	An indication is made to show whether or not the certificate is attached.
[Registration]	Registers the program destination.
[Edit]	Edits the registered program destination. The settings are the same as ones available dur- ing registration.
[Delete]	Deletes the program destination.

When "E-mail" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition			
No.	Displays the registration number.			
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).			
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".			

Item	Definition				
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.				
File Type	Specify the file format.				
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).				
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.				
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Subject List].				
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Text List].				
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.				
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.				
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.				
Density	Specify the density.				
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.				
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.				
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.				
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.				
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.				
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.				
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.				
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.				
Neg./Pos. Reverse	A setting is made to decide whether or not a reversal is made between the white section and the black section in the original.				
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".				
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to pint page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Page Number Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".				
Compose (Header/Footer)	Selects whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].				
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.				
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.				
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.				

When "FTP" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition		
No.	Displays the registration number.		
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).		
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".		
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.		
File Type	Specify the file format.		
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).		
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.		

Item	Definition				
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.				
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.				
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.				
Density	Specify the density.				
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.				
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.				
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.				
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].				
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.				
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.				
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.				
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.				
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.				
Neg./Pos. Reverse	A setting is made to decide whether or not a reversal is made between the white section and the black section in the original.				
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".				
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".				
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered header/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].				
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.				
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.				
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.				

## When "SMB" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition		
No.	Displays the registration number.		
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).		
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".		
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.		
File Type	Specify the file format.		
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).		
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.		
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.		
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.		
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.		
Density	Specify the density.		
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.		

Item	Definition
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.
Neg./Pos. Reverse	A setting is made to decide whether or not a reversal is made between the white section and the black section in the original.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.

When "WebDAV" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition			
No.	Displays the registration number.			
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).			
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".			
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.			
File Type	Specify the file format.			
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).			
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.			
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.			
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.			
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.			
Density	Specify the density.			
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.			
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.			
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.			
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].			
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.			

Item	Definition					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Neg./Pos. Reverse	A setting is made to decide whether or not a reversal is made between the white section and the black section in the original.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fir Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the co trol panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.					

When "User Box" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition				
No.	Displays the registration number.				
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).				
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".				
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.				
File Type	Specify the file format.				
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).				
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.				
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.				
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.				
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.				
Density	Specify the density.				
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.				
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.				
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.				
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].				
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.				
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.				
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.				
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.				
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.				
Neg./Pos. Reverse	A setting is made to decide whether or not a reversal is made between the white section and the black section in the original.				

Item	Definition				
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pa es", and "Size".				
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".				
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].				
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.				
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.				
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.				

When "Fax" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Displays the registration number.					
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).					
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".					
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.					
File Type	Specify the file format.					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
Timer TX	Specify whether to perform timer communication. If yes, enter the transmission time.					
Password TX	Specify whether to send the password. If yes, enter the password.					
F-Code	Specify whether to send the password using F code. If "Enable" is selected, type in the SUB address and password.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Stamp	A setting is made to decide whether the Stamp Setting is turned ON or OFF.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to pint page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Page Number Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					

Item	Definition
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.

When "IP Address Fax" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition						
No.	Displays the registration number.						
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).						
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".						
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.						
File Type	Specify the file format.						
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.						
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.						
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.						
Density	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original. Specify the density.						
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.						
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.						
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.						
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.						
Stamp	A setting is made to decide whether the Stamp Setting is turned ON or OFF.						
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.						
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.						
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.						
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".						
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".						
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head- er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].						
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.						
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.						
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.						

#### When "Internet Fax" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition					
No.	Displays the registration number.					
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).					
Destination Information	Specify the address information. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input".					
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.					
File Type	Specify the file format.					
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Subject List].					
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Text List].					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Stamp	A setting is made to decide whether the Stamp Setting is turned ON or OFF.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.					

## When "Group" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition	
No.	Displays the registration number.	
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).	
Destination Information	Specify the address information.	
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.	
File Type	Specify the file format.	
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).	

Item	Definition					
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.					
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Subject List].					
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject click [Text List].					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].					
Timer TX	Specify whether to perform timer communication. If yes, enter the transmission time.					
Password TX	Specify whether to send the password. If yes, enter the password.					
F-Code	Specify whether to send the password using F code. If "Enable" is selected, type in the SUB address and password.					
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Stamp	A setting is made to decide whether the Stamp Setting is turned ON or OFF.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Neg./Pos. Reverse	A setting is made to decide whether or not a reversal is made between the white section and the black section in the original.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and reference allowed level.					

When "No Destination" was selected using [Registration]

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Type in the registration name (up to 24 characters).
Resolution	Specifies the resolution.
File Type	Specify the file format.

Item	Definition					
File Name	Specify the file name (up to 30 characters).					
Page Setting	Specify the unit of data to be saved.					
Subject	Specify the E-mail subject. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Subject List].					
Text	Specify the E-mail text. To use the default subject, select "Not Specified". To check the contents of the subject, click [Text List].					
Simplex/Duplex	Specify whether the original is 2-sided.					
Original Type	Specify the quality of the original, such as text or photo.					
Separate Scan	Specify whether to divide scanning of the original.					
Density	Specify the density.					
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.					
Scan Size	Specify the original size ("Auto", "Standard Size" or "Custom Size"). If "Standard Size" is selected, select the size and the feed direction. If "Custom Size" is selected, specify the height and width.					
Application Setting	Click the [Display] button, and then specify settings for the functions that are displayed.					
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to send notification of scan data URL. Specify the notification address for "Address". To select a destination from the list, click [Search from List].					
Timer TX	Specify whether to perform timer communication. If yes, enter the transmission time.					
Password TX	Specify whether to send the password. If yes, enter the password.					
F-Code	Specify whether to send the password using F code. If "Enable" is selected, type in the SUB address and password.					
Original Direction	Specify the original orientation.					
2-Sided Binding Direc- tion	Specify the binding orientation of the original.					
Stamp	A setting is made to decide whether the Stamp Setting is turned ON or OFF.					
Special Original	Specify the original in a different size.					
Book Scan	Specify whether to perform book scan.					
Erase	Specify whether to perform frame erase.					
Neg./Pos. Reverse	A setting is made to decide whether or not a reversal is made between the white section and the black section in the original.					
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date/time. If yes, specify settings for "Date Type", "Time Type", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", "Pag- es", and "Size".					
Compose (Page)	Specify whether to print page numbers. If yes, specify settings for "Page Number", "Chapter", "Print Position", "Fine-Tune", and "Size".					
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print a header/footer. If yes, specify the registration number of the header/footer. To check the registered head er/footer, click [Confirm Registered Contents].					
Compose (Stamp)	Specify whether to print the stamp. If yes, specify settings for "Preset Stamp" or "Registered Stamp", "Print Position", "Fine- Tune", "Pages", and "Size". To check the registered stamp, click [Confirm Registered Contents]. To use the registered stamp function, stamps must be registered from the con- trol panel in advance.					
Stamp Combine Method	Specify the stamp composition method.					
Limiting Access to Desti- nations	Click [Display], and then specify the group that is allowed to access a destination and ref- erence allowed level.					

# 1.50.4 Registering or editing destinations to be temporarily used

Register destinations to be temporarily used or change temporarily used destination settings.

## Q Detail

If "Manual Destination Input" is specified to "Allow", "Temporary One-Touch" is displayed. Specify settings for "Manual Destination Input" from the control panel.

#### **Temporary One-Touch**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Temporary One-Touch".

The settings are the same as the program destination settings. For "Temporary One-Touch", the settings for "Limiting Access to Destinations" are not displayed. For details on settings for "Temporary One-Touch", refer to "Registering or editing a program destination" on page 1-174.

### 1.50.5 Registering E-mail subject or text

Register a subject and text to be used for sending messages or Internet faxes.

#### Subject

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Subject" - [Edit]. Specify the following settings.

🕙 Store Address - Mic	rosoft Intern	et Explorer				
<u>File Edit View Favor</u>	rites <u>T</u> ools I	Help				A
		🌆 Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► Address Book		Subject Registratio	n			
► Group		No.	1			
▶ Program		Subject				
Temporary One-To	ouch					
Subject				[	OK Cancel	1
► Text				1		-
Prefix/Suffix						
Header Information	n					
		_				

Item	Definition	
No.	Displays the registration number.	
Subject	Register the E-Mail subject (up to 64 characters).	

### Text

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Text" - [Edit]. Specify the following settings.

Store Address - Microsoft Internet	et Explorer				
<u>File Edit View Favorites Tools H</u>	elp				
	🆓 Administrator			Logout	?
	Ready to Scan				
	Ready to Print			6	<sup>*</sup>
Maintenance Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
▶ Address Book	Text Registration				
► Group	No.	1			
► Program	Text				
Temporary One-Touch	1000			*	
▶ Subject					
► Text					-
▶ Prefix/Suffix			l	OK Cancel	
Header Information					
	-				

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number.
Text	Register the E-Mail body text (up to 256 characters).

#### 1.50.6 Using an application registered in an external server

When using an application, such as RightFax Server, registered with an external server, register the application information and server address.

By registering the application and server, a connection to the server of the selected application can automatically be established for use. Up to five applications and servers can be registered. Depending on settings for registered applications, custom items can be specified. PageScope Web Connection provides the following templates. The templates are provided with pre-determined different custom items by application.

# Q

Detail

If the optional fax kit has not been installed, "Application Registration" is displayed in the menu.

When not using templates, specify custom item settings manually.

Only when the optional fax kit is not installed and Internet fax is disabled, the registered applications can be displayed and operated from the control panel of this machine.

#### For WalkUp Fax

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	Sender Name (CS)	Name	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Fax Number (CS)	PersonalFaxNum- ber	ASCII	-	-
3	TEL Number (CS)	PersonalVoiceNum- ber	ASCII	-	-
4	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
5	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
6	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-

For Fax with Account

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	Sender Name (CS)	Name	ASCII	-	-
2	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
3	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
4	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
5	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
6	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
7	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
8	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
9	Holi For Preview	HoldForPreview	-	-	False

For Secure Docs

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
3	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
4	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
5	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
6	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
7	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
8	Document PW	DocumentPass- word	ASCII	-	-
9	Delivery Method	Delivery	-	-	Secure

For Certified Delivery

No.	Button Name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Options
1	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
3	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
4	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
5	BillingCode1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
6	BillingCode2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
7	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
8	Document PW	DocumentPass- word	ASCII	-	-
9	Delivery Method	Delivery	-	-	Secure

## **Application Registration**

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Application Registration" - [Registration/Edit].

Select the template type, and then specify the following settings.

<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u> vor	ites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> e	lp				
		& Administrator			Logout	?
		Ready to Scan				
		Ready to Print				Ŷ
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network	
► Address Book		Application Registrat	ion			
► Group		Application Setting				
▶ Program		No.	1			
Temporary One-To	uch	Application Name				_
▶ Subject		Server Setting				
► Text		Host Address	0	.0.0.0		
Application Registr	ation	File Path	Γ			
► Prefix/Suffix		User ID	Γ			
Header Information	ı	Password				
		anonymous	C	DFF 🔽		
		PASV Mode	C	DFF 💌		
		Proxy	C	DFF 🔽		
		Port No.	2	1 (1-65535)		
						_
				Back N	Vext Cancel	1
						-

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the registration number of the selected application.
Application Name	Enter the application name (up to 16 characters).
Host Address	Enter the host address for the server registering the application (up to 15 characters).

Item	Definition
File Path	Enter the application file path (up to 96 characters).
User ID	Enter the user ID for logging in to the server (up to 47 characters).
Password	Enter the password for logging in to the server (up to 31 characters).
anonymous	Specify whether even an anonymous user can access the destination.
PASV Mode	Register whether to make communication in the PASV mode.
Proxy	Specifies whether or not a proxy server is used.
Port No.	Specify the port number to be used.
[Next]	Displays the custom item list. To display the Function Setting screen, click [Edit] for an item to be added or changed.

#### **Function Settings**

Item	Definition
No.	Displays the number of the selected item.
Button Name	Enter the button name (up to 16 characters).
Function Name	Specify the function name.
Message on Panel	Enter the name to be displayed on the panel (32 characters or less).
Display Method	Specify whether to display the name.
Default Value	Enter the default value. To hide the default value, select the "Input string shown as ****" check box. The characters that can be entered differ depending on the selected function.
Keyboard Type	Specify the keyboard type.
Options (When "Authentication" is selected)	Select either "None" or "Password".
Options (When "Delivery" is se- lected)	Select "Normal", "Secure", "Certified" or "Secure Certified".
Options (When "Hold For Pre- view" is selected)	Select "Yes" or "No".
Input Time (When "DelaySendData- Time" is selected)	Select "Year/Month/Day/Hour/Minute".
Default (When "DelaySendData- Time" is selected)	Select either "Device Time" or "Not Specify".

## 1.50.7 Simplifying E-mail address entry

To simplify E-mail address entry, register Prefix/Suffix.

#### Prefix/Suffix

In Administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select the Store Address tab - "Prefix/Suffix" - [Edit]. Specify the following settings.

🗿 Store Address - Microsoft Internet Explorer							
<u>File E</u> dit <u>V</u> iew F <u>a</u>	vorites <u>T</u> ools <u>H</u> elp						
	2	Administrator			Logout	?	
		Ready to Scan					
		Ready to Print				Ċ	
Maintenance	Security	Box	Print Setting	Store Address	Network		
► Address Book	F	Prefix/Suffix					
► Group		No.	1				
► Program		Prefix					
Temporary One-Touch		Suffix					
Subject						_	
► Text				l	OK Cancel		
▶ Prefix/Suffix							
Header Information							

Item	Definition	
No.	Displays the registration number.	
Prefix	Register the prefix (up to 20 characters).	
Suffix	Register the suffix (up to 64 characters).	



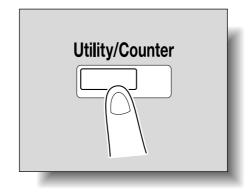
# 2 Network Settings

# 2.1 Displaying the Network Settings screen

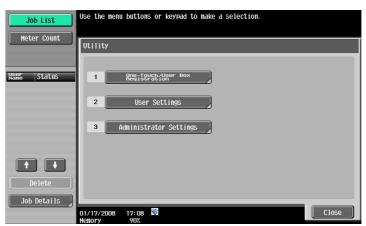
Settings by purpose can be specified via network settings in the control panel of the machine.

Access network settings from the Administrator Settings screen. Perform the following steps to display the Network Settings screen.

1 Press the [Utility/Counter] key.

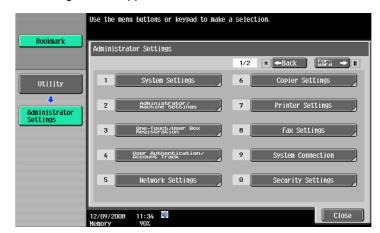


- 2 Touch [3 Administrator Settings].
  - When setting the Utility screen, you can also select a setting by using the keypad to enter the number next to the desired button. To select [3 Administrator Settings], press the [3] key in the keypad.

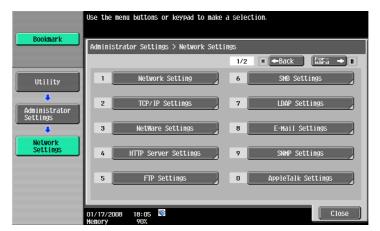


**3** Type in the password, and then touch [OK].

Bookmark	Use the keyboard or keypad to type in the Administrator password. Press ICJ to erase the entered the Administrator password.				
	Utility > Administrator Settings				
Utility	+ Pere				
Administrator Settings	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - ^ 9 W e r t y u i o p e [				
	asdfghjkl::1 zxcvbnn/\Shift				
	01/17/2008 17:45 Menory 90X				



4 Touch [5 Network Settings] in the Administrator Settings screen. The Network Settings screen appears.





۵...

#### Reminder

In order to apply all changes to the network settings, turn off this machine, then on again.

When turning off the main power switch and turning it on again, wait for 10 seconds or longer after power-off, and then turn on the power again. Otherwise, the machine may not operate correctly.

When specifying settings by purpose from the control panel of the machine, refer to this menu list. This section describes the buttons available when the [5 Network Settings] is touched.

۵...

Note

For details on displaying the Network Settings screen, refer to "Displaying the Network Settings screen" on page 2-2.

## 2.2.1 Network Settings screen (1/2)

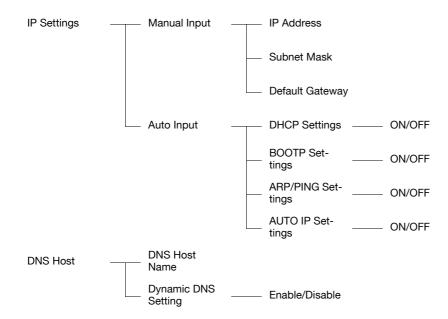
The following setting items are available from the Network Settings screen (1/2).

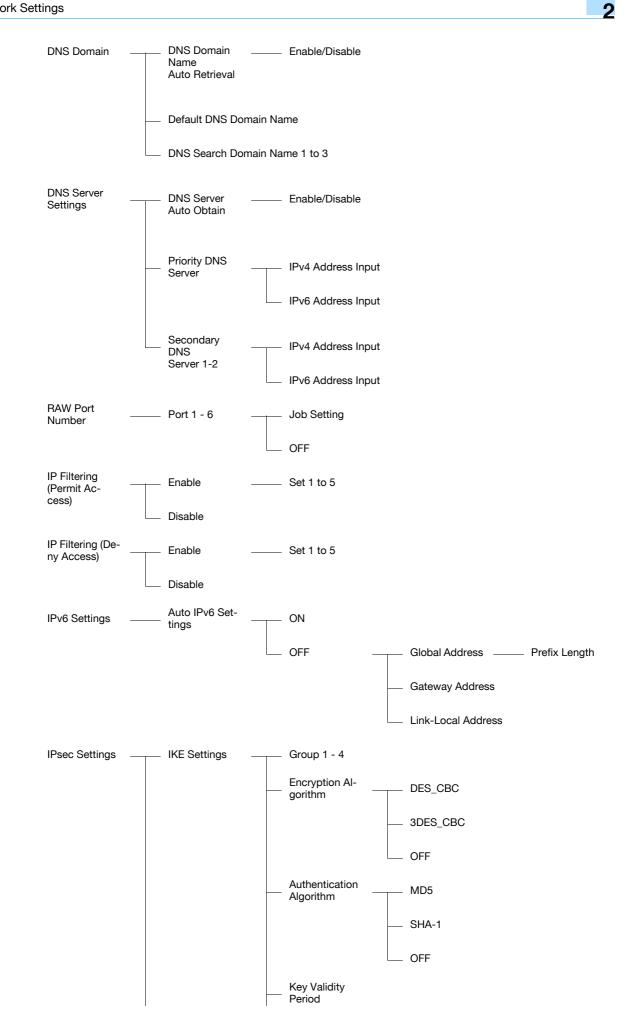


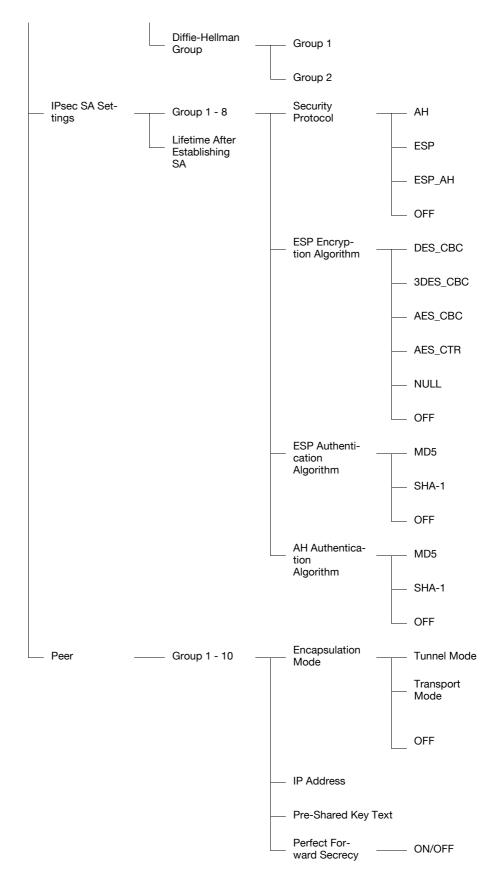
### [1] Network Setting



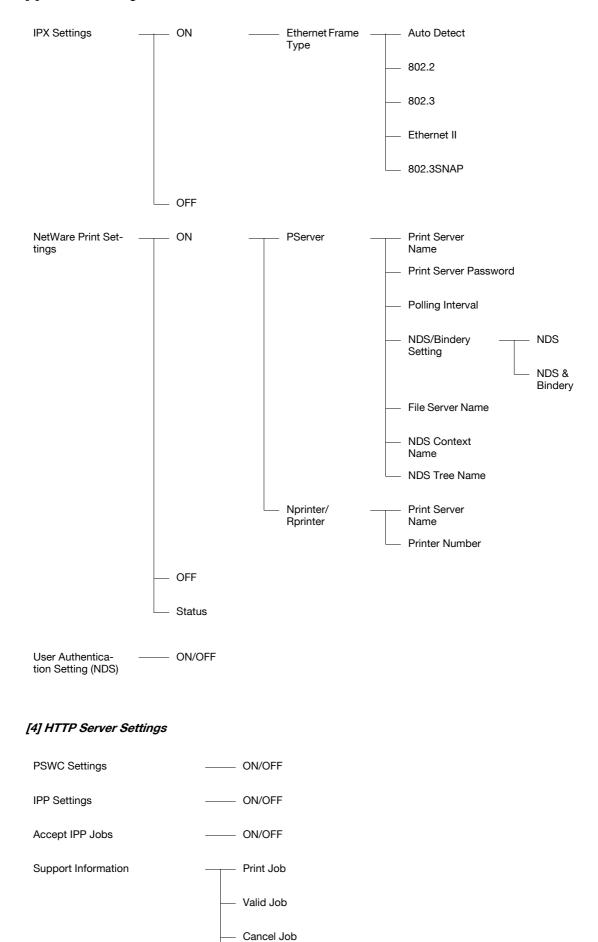
### [2] TCP/IP Settings

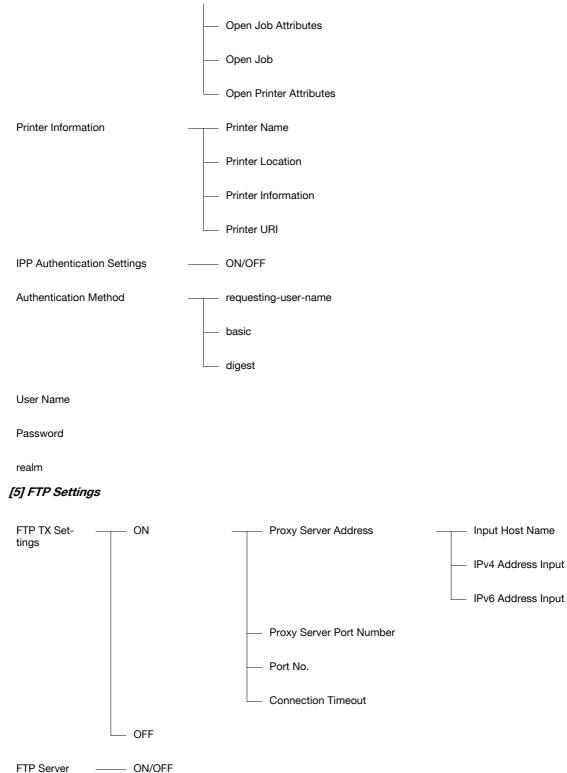






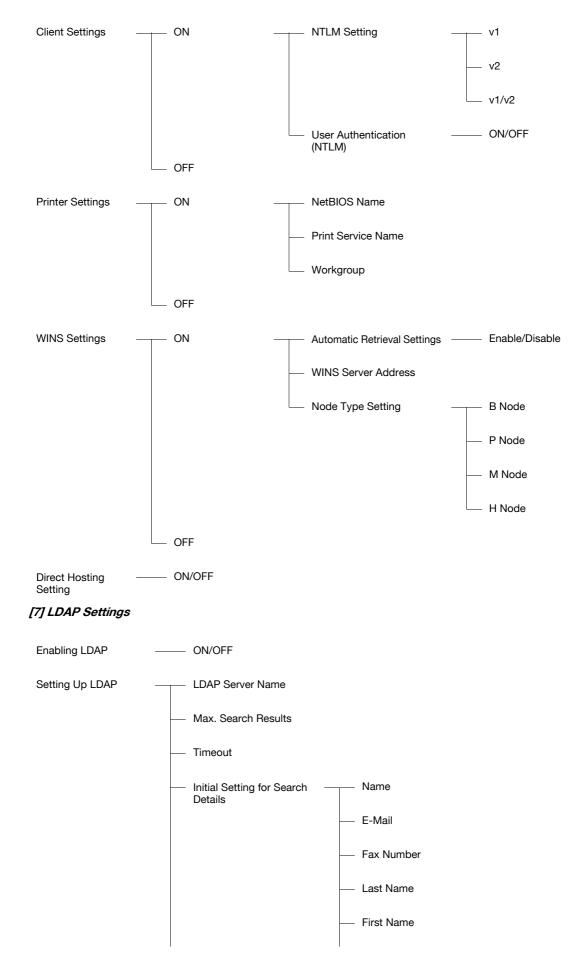
#### [3] NetWare Settings

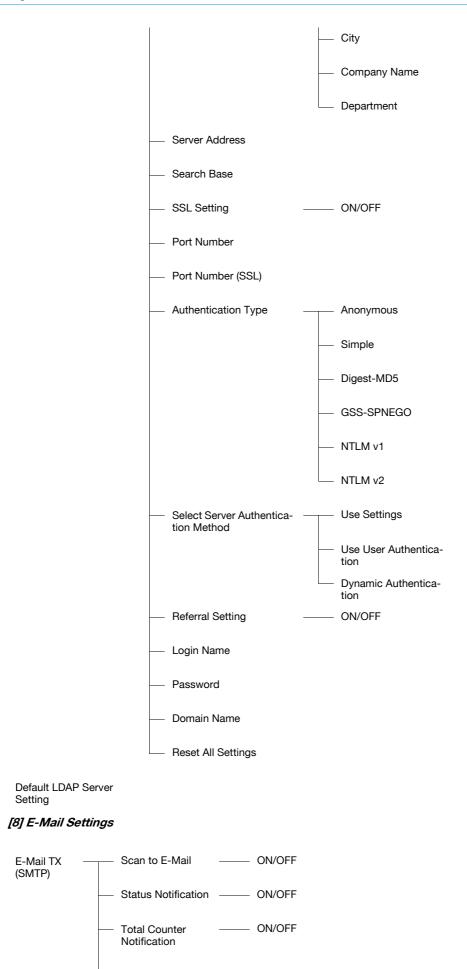


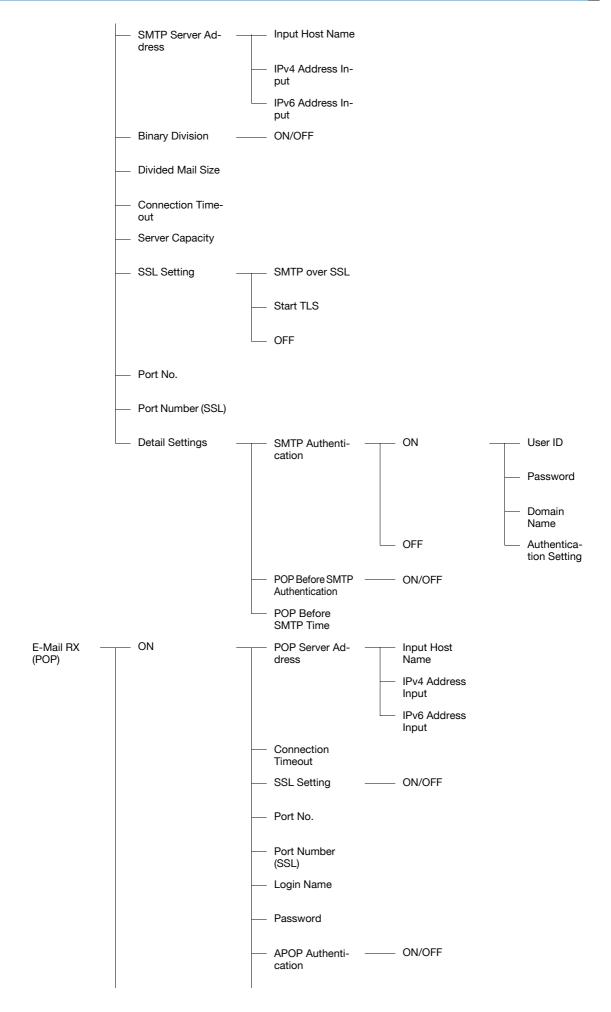


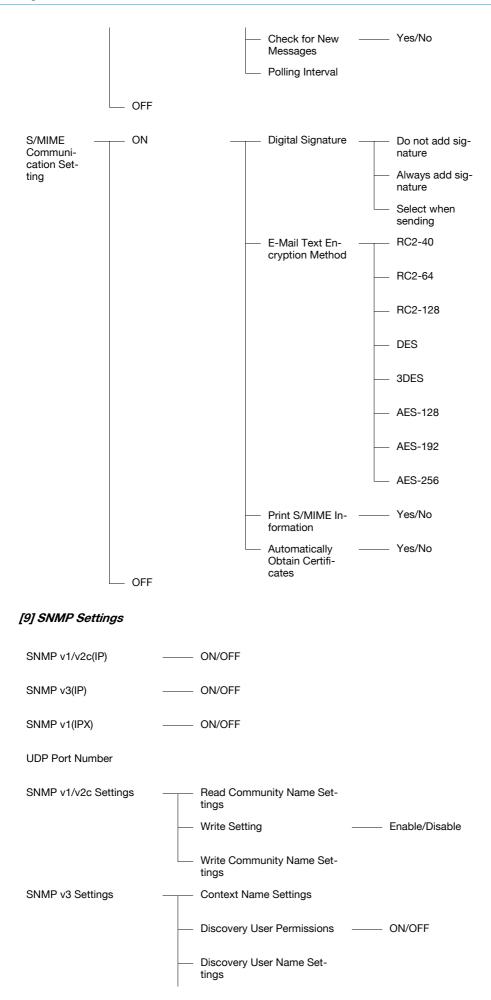
FTP Server —— Settings

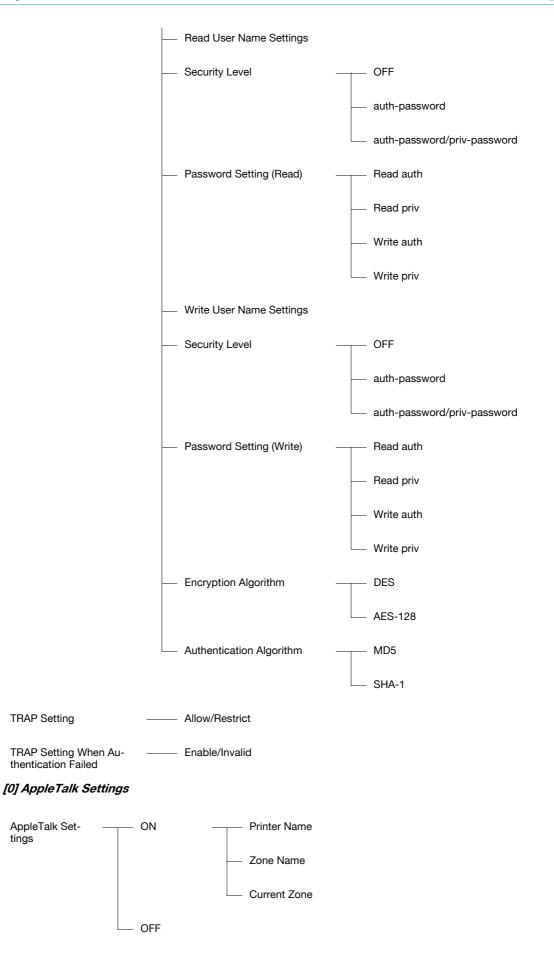
### [6] SMB Settings







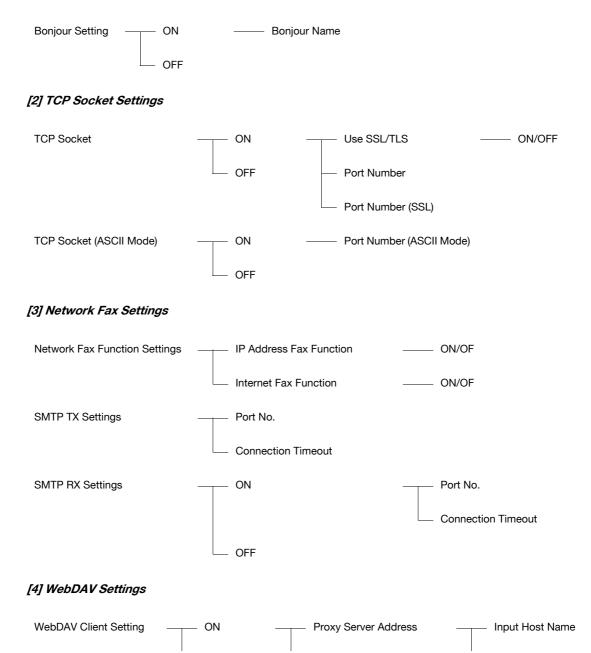


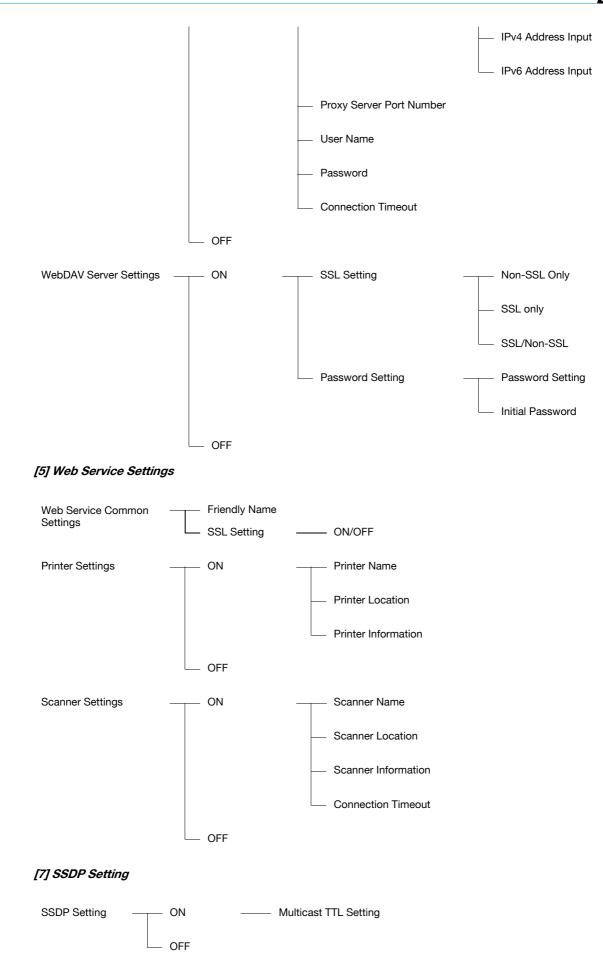


The following setting items are available from the Network Settings screen (2/2).

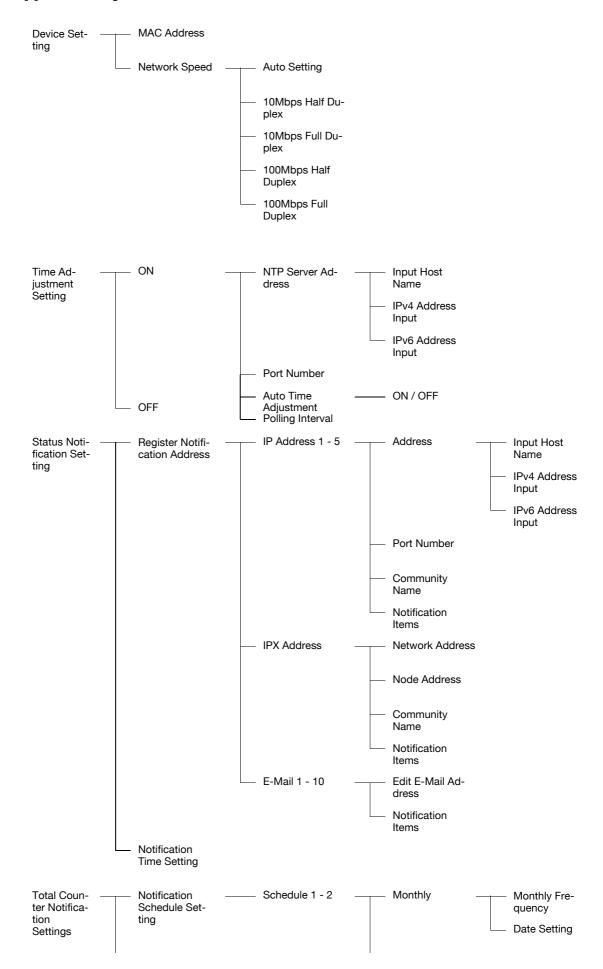


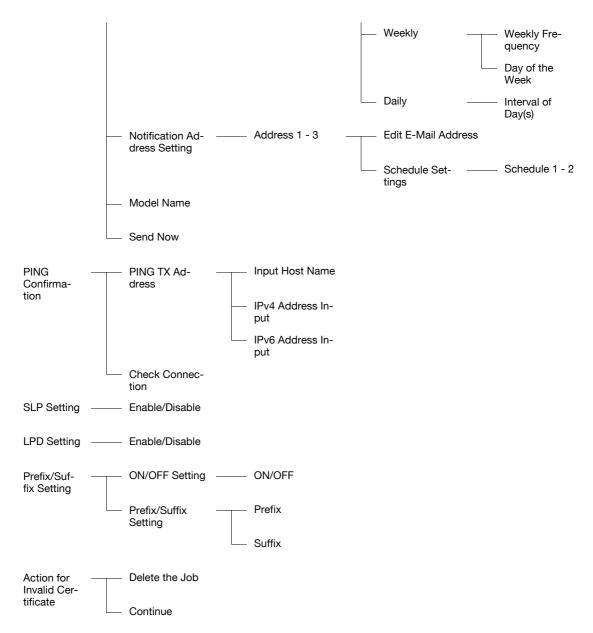
#### [1] Bonjour Setting





### [8] Detail Settings





[9] IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting





# 3 Appendix

## 3.1 **Product Specifications (Network functions)**

Item	Specifications
Туре	Embedded
Frame type	IEEE802.2/802.3 / Ethernet II / IEEE802.3SNAP
Cable type	10Base-T / 100Base-TX / 1000Base-T
Connector	RJ-45
Mainly supported protocols	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), BOOTP, ARP, ICMP, DHCP, AutoIP, SLP, SNMP, FTP, LPR/LPD, RAW Socket, SMB over TCP/IP, IPP, HTTP, POP, SMTP, LDAP, NTP, SSL, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, Bonjour, NetBEUI, WebDAV, DPWS, S/MIME, Ipsec, DNS, DynamicDNS, SSDP, EAP
Supported LDAP servers	OpenLDAP 2.1x, Active Directory, Exchange 5.5/2000/2003, Sun Java Directory Server (Netscape/iPlanet Directory Server), Novell NetWare 5.x/6.x NDS, Novell eD-irectory 8.6/8.7, LotusDominoServer (5.x/6.x)*
Supported LDAP protocol	LDAP Protocol Version 3 (Version 2 not supported)
Supported SSL versions	SSL2, SSL3, and TLS1.0 (An x.509 certificate must be installed on the server.)
Multiprotocol	Auto detection
Operating environment for PageScope Web Connection	Supported Web browsers: Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6 or later recommended (JavaScript and Cookies en- abled) Microsoft XML parser MSXML 3.X must be installed when Internet Explorer Ver. 5.5 is being used. Netscape Navigator Ver. 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Mozilla Firefox Ver. 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Adobe <sup>®</sup> Flash <sup>®</sup> Player (plug-in version 7.0 or later required if "Flash" is selected as the display format) Windows NT 4.0 and Mac OS 8/9 do not support versions on and after the Flash Player 8. When using an OS like these, download the Flash Player 7 from the Adobe site or select HTML in the display style of PageScope Web Connection.
Setup	Saved to non-volatile memory

If you specify the search condition to "OR" or "END" when using the LotusDominoServer, it does not work properly.

## 3.2 Glossary

Term	Description	
10Base-T/ 10B100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T	A set specifications under the Ethernet standards. Uses cables consisting of pairs of twisted copper wires. The transmission speed of 10Base-T is 10 Mbps, of 100Base-TX is 100 Mbps, and of 1000Base-T is 1,000 Mbps.	
2in1	This is a function to send the page set as double page by consolidating the two-page document on one sheet of paper.	
Abbreviation/ address	This is a function to register the frequently used fax number of the recipient. When registering abbreviation/address, you can register the address name and search characters. It makes possible to specify the address using the searched character of the abbreviated selection.	
Active directory	A service that consolidates management of all information such as hardware re- sources for servers, clients, and printers on a network supported by Microsoft and the attributes and access permissions of the users.	
Adobe <sup>®</sup> Flash <sup>®</sup>	Software developed by Adobe Systems Inc. (formerly developed by Macromedia, Inc.), and used to create data combining vector-graphic animation and sound, and the format of this data file. The bidirectional content can be manipulated using a keyboard and a mouse. The files can be kept relatively compact, and they can be accessed with the Web browser plug-in.	
anonymous FTP	While normal FTP sites are protected by an account name and password, this type of FTP site can be used by anyone without a password by simply entering "anonymous" as the account name.	
APOP	Abbreviation for Authenticated Post Office Protocol. An authentication method with encrypted passwords, which results in increased safety, as compared to the usual unencrypted passwords used by POP to retrieve e-mail messages.	
AppleTalk	A generic name for the protocol suite developed by Apple Computer for computer networking.	
Auto IP	A function for automatically acquiring the IP address. If acquisition of the IP address failed with DHCP, an IP address is acquired from the address space of 169.254.0.0.	
Background Removal	This function sends a document after adjusting bright-ness of the background color of the document.	
Binding Position	This is a function for specifying the binding position of a double-sided document sent using the ADF. There is top/bottom binding, where the binding position is at the top (or) bottom of the document, and there is left/right binding, where the binding position is at the left (or right) of the document and the top and bottom of the second side of the document differ.	
bit	Abbreviation for Binary Digit. The smallest unit of information (data quantity) on a computer or printer. Displays data using 0 or 1.	
Bitmap Font	A font that is displayed using a collection of dots. These look increasingly jagged with larger font sizes.	
BMP	Abbreviation for Bitmap. A file format for saving image data which uses the .bmp ex- tension. Commonly used on Windows platforms. You can specify the color depth from mon- ochrome (2 values) to full color (16,777,216 colors). Images are not usually com- pressed when saved.	
Bonjour	Macintosh network technology for automatically detecting devices connected to the network and for specifying settings. Previously called "Rendezvous", the name was changed to "Bonjour" starting with Mac OS X v10.4.	
Book Copy	A function for sending a fax of a book or catalog with the front cover, back cover and the left and right pages sent as separate pages.	
BOOTP	Abbreviation for Bootstrap Protocol. A protocol in which a client computer on a TCP/IP network automatically specifies the network settings from the server. Currently, DHCP, which is an advanced protocol based on BOOTP, is mainly used.	
bps	This is an abbreviation of bit per second. It means the amount of data sent in one second as the unit of data transmission.	
Brightness	Brightness of a display screen.	
Broadcast	A transmission of a single document to many recipients in one operation.	
Bulletin board	This function posts the documents to be viewed, or stores the documents to be transmitted through polling.	
Byte	Unit of information (data quantity) on a computer or printer.	

Term	Description
Check Dest. & Send	A function for sending a fax transmission only after the specified fax number and the fax number information (CSI) for the recipient's machine match. This prevents misdi- rected transmissions since a transmission error occurs if the numbers do not match.
Client	A computer that uses the services provided by a server through a network.
Closed Network RX	A function for accepting only transmissions from recipient machines with a matching password.
Confidential communication	A function for sending and receiving documents to be viewed only by specific per- sons. The confidential document is saved in a confidential box in the recipient's ma- chine and is not printed when it is received. The received document can be printed when a specific operation is performed, for example, when the access code for the confidential box is entered.
Contrast	The difference in intensity between the light and dark parts of the image (light/dark variation). An image with small light/dark variation has low contrast, and an image with large light/dark variation has high contrast.
CSV	Abbreviation for Comma Separated Values. One of the formats for saving database or spreadsheet data as a text file. (The file extension is ".csv".) The data, which is separated by commas (as the delimiter), can be shared by different applications.
Default	The initial settings. The settings first selected when the machine is turned on, or the settings first specified when the function is selected.
Default gateway	A device, such as a computer or router, used as a gateway to access computers not on the same LAN.
Default value	The setting value specified in advance when the machine is shipped from the factory. Some default settings can be changed from the settings menu. It is convenient to set frequently used values as default settings based on the usage conditions.
Density	An indication of the amount of darkness in the image.
Density Compensation	Color correction function used in output devices such as printers and displays.
DHCP	Abbreviation for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. A protocol in which a client computer on a TCP/IP network automatically specifies the network settings from the server. With collective management of the IP address for DHCP clients on the DHCP server, you can avoid duplication of an address and build a network easily.
Dialing method	There are three types: PB (push-button (tone) dialing), 10PPS (pulse dialing at 10 pps), and 20PPS (pulse dialing at 20 pps).
Direct Inward Dialing (DID)	A function that provides numbers for fax and phone functions separately. In order to use the DID function, one must subscribe for NTT's DID (modem DID) services.
Dither	One method of combining two colors to create an approximate representation of shades of gray. Processing is easier than with error diffusion, but this can lead to irregularities.
DNS	Abbreviation for Domain Name System. A system that acquires the supported IP addresses from host names in a network environment. DNS allows the user to access other computers over a network by specifying host names, instead of having to use IP addresses that are difficult to re- member and complicated.
DPI (dpi)	Abbreviation for Dots Per Inch. A resolution unit used by printers and scanners. Indicates how many dots per inch are represented in an image. The higher the value, the higher the resolution.
Driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a peripheral device.
DSN	Abbreviation for Delivery Status Notifications. A delivery status notification message that is sent back to the sender at the time the E-mail is received at the recipients mail server.
Dynamic authentication (LDAP setting)	An authentication method option for connecting to the LDAP server from the multi- functional product. Select this option if the name and password for logging on to the LDAP server must be entered each time by the user when referencing the destination information from the LDAP server.
ECM	Abbreviation for Error Correction Mode. Error resend mode of G3 communication. It confirms whether the data is correctly sent to the recipient or not, and if it is not correctly sent, it communicates by resend- ing the same data. If the recipient is set for the ECM mode and the communication is done in ECM unless ECM off is specified in this machine.
Ethernet	LAN transmission line standard.
Fax ID	The identifying code for the mutual recognition when transmitting faxes. Normally the fax number is registered as the fax ID.

Term	Description	
File extension	The characters added to the file name in order to identify file formats. The file extension is added after a period, for example, ".bmp" or ".jpg".	
Forced memory reception	This is the function to store the received document in memory and to print if required.	
Frame Erase	This is a function to erase the black shadow around the document and then transmit the fax, for example, when scanning the document formed of booklet or when scanning a document by keeping ADF open.	
Frame type	Type of communication format used in a NetWare environment. Communication is not possible if the same frame type is not used.	
FTP	Abbreviation for File Transfer Protocol. A protocol for transferring files over the Internet or an intranet on the TCP/IP network.	
F code	This is a communication procedure for the usage of sub address of T.30* standard- ized by ITU-T (international telecommunication union) provided by Japanese Com- munications Industrial Corporation. In the communication between fax machines with the F code function, various functions that use F code can be utilized even if the manufacturers of the fax machines are different. In this machine, F code is used in the bulletin boards, relay request, relay transmissions, confidential communication, and password transmission. (*Communication standard)	
G3	This is a fax communication mode standardized by the ITU-T (International Telecom- munication Union). The communication modes are G3 and G4. G3 is currently the most popularly used mode.	
Gateway	Hardware and software used as the point where a network is connected to a network. A gateway also changes data formats, addresses, and protocols according to the connected network.	
Gradation	The light and dark levels of an image. As the number increases, smoother brightness variations can be reproduced.	
Gray Scale	Monochrome image expressed with black and white gradation information.	
Group	Grouping of the abbreviation No. of multiple groups. This function is useful when there is a large number sequential broadcast and sequential polling received in the same address.	
GSS-SPNEGO/ Simple/Digest MD5	Authentication methods for logging on to the LDAP server. The authentication meth- od (GSS-SPENGO, SIMPLE or Digest MD5) for the LDAP server differs depending on the server being used and the server settings.	
Halftone	The method of producing the light and dark parts of an image through varying sizes of black and white dots.	
Hard disk	Large capacity storage device for storing data. The data can be stored even if the power is turned off.	
Host name	Displayed name of a device over a network.	
НТТР	Abbreviation for HyperText Transfer Protocol. A protocol used to send and receive data between a Web server and a client (Web browser). Documents containing images, recordings, or video clips can be exchanged with the expressive form information.	
IEEE802.1X	Specification for the authentication of a terminal used to access the network with the wired LAN or wireless LAN. The LAN switch corresponding to IEEE802.1X allows a connection to the LAN after the authentication of a computer connected is made to check to see if the user is a correct one.	
Install	To install hardware, operating systems, applications, printer drivers on to a compu- ter.	
Internet Fax	Transmission method by which scanned documents are sent and received between an Internet fax and computers as TIFF format E-Mail attachments over intranets (in- ternal company networks) and the Internet.	
IPP	Abbreviation for Internet Printing Protocol. A protocol that sends and receives print data and controls printers over a TCP/ IP network such as the Internet. Data can also be sent to printers in remote areas to be printed over the Internet.	
IPsec	The security technology that is used with TCP/IP. A service with enhanced security can be provided by specifying the encryption of transmission packets and the authentication protocol.	
IPv6	Abbreviation for Internet Protocol version 6. A protocol that has been prepared to replace the currently used IPv4 protocol in re- sponse to increase in the number of devices that use the Internet. Additional improvements include 128-bit IP addresses and added security features.	
IPX	One of protocols used with NetWare. Operates at the network layer of the OSI reference model.	

Term	Description	
IPX/SPX	Abbreviation for Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. A protocol developed by Novell, Inc. that is commonly used under a NetWare environment.	
IP Address	A code (address) that is used to identify individual network devices over the Internet. IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4), widely spread today, is expressed such as 192.168.1.10 using 32-bit numbers divided into four. In the next generation IPv6 (In- ternet Protocol version 6), 128-bit IP addresses are used. IP addresses are assigned to devices, including computers, which are connected to the Internet.	
IP Address Fax	An IP address identifies various networked devices on the Internet. IP Address Fax uses these addresses to transmit and receive faxes within an intranet.	
Kerberos	A type of network authentication system used by Windows 2000 or later. Used in Ac- tive Directory authentication. Users can be safely and efficiently authenticated with a two-phase authentication (user logon and network resource usage) on a dependable site set up on the network.	
LAN	Abbreviation for Local Area Network. A network which connects computers on the same floor, in the same building, or in neighboring buildings.	
Local line	Public telephone line supported by Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.	
Local printer	A printer connected to a parallel or USB port of a computer.	
Long Document	A setting for sending document pages longer than A3 size (420 mm/16-1/2 inch). Long documents can be transmitted by specifying the setting for long originals.	
LPD	Abbreviation for Line Printer Daemon. A printer protocol that uses TCP/IP and is plat- form-independent. LPD was originally developed for BSD UNIX, and it has become the standard printing protocol that can be used with any computers.	
LPR/LPD	Abbreviation for Line Printer Request/Line Printer Daemon. A printing method over a network in a Windows NT system or UNIX system. Using TCP/IP, you can output print data from Windows or Unix to a printer over a network.	
LDAP	Abbreviation for Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. On a TCP/ IP network, such as the Internet or an intranet, this protocol is used to access a database for managing environment information and the E-Mail addresses of network users.	
MAC address	Abbreviation for Media Access Control address. With a special ID number for each Ethernet card, data can be sent and received between the cards. This number consists of 48 bits. The first 24 bits consist of a number that represents a manufacture, which is controlled and assigned by IEEE. The last 24 bits consist of a number that the manufacturer assigns uniquely to the card.	
Main scanning	The operation of optically scanning the document and converting it to image data.	
Main scanning direction	This is the horizontal direction of scanned documents.	
Manual transmission	An operation to send a fax while checking the status of the receiving machine.	
Memory	Storage device for storing data temporally. When the power is turned off the data may or may not be erased.	
Memory overflow	A condition where the fax memory becomes full while scanned documents or tem- porarily stored documents are saved.	
Memory transmission	This is a procedure for starting a fax transmission after a document is scanned and stored in the memory. If memory transmission is used, the total number of pages are automatically printed in the page number of the transmission source information and an image of the first page of the sent document is printed in the transmission report. However, the memory may become full if there are many pages of the document or if the data is large due to finely detailed images.	
MDN	Abbreviation for Message Disposition Notifications. A delivery confirmation message that is sent back to the sender in response to such as request.	
MH	Abbreviation for Modified Huffman. A data compression encoding method for fax transmissions. Documents containing mostly text are compressed to about 1/10 their original size.	
MIB	Abbreviation for Management Information Base. In a TCP/IP transmission, MIB uses SNMP to define the management information format for a group of network devices. There are two formats: the manufacturer-specific private MIB and the standardized MIB.	
Mixed Original	This is a function to detect and send various sizes of documents.	
MMR	Abbreviation for Modified Modified Read. A data compression encoding method for fax transmissions. Documents containing mostly text are compressed to about 1/20 their original size.	

Term	Description	
NDPS	Abbreviation for Novell Distributed Print Services. Provides a highly efficient printing solution in an NDS environment. By using the NDPS as a printer server, you can output from the desired printer, automatically download the printer driver of a newly installed printer, simplify and automate complicated management environments related to printer use, and integrate management related to the network printer.	
NDS	Abbreviation for Novell Directory Services. The servers and printers on a network and the shared resources of the user informa- tion, as well as the user access authority over these items can be consolidated in the hierarchic structure.	
NetBIOS	Abbreviation for Network Basic Input Output System. A communication interface developed by IBM.	
NetBEUI	Abbreviation for NetBIOS Extended User Interface. A network protocol developed by IBM. By simply specifying the computer name, you can build a small-scale network.	
NetWare	Network operating system developed by Novell. NetWare IPX/SPX is used as the communication protocol.	
No. of documents	Used for quick memory transmission to send a fax transmission with the total page numbers. This function allows the recipient to check whether all pages were received or not (In case of memory transmission, the total no. of pages are automatically add-ed).	
Nprinter/Rprinter	Remote printer support module for using a printer server under a NetWare environ- ment.	
	Use NetWare 3.x with Rprinter, and NetWare 4.x with Nprinter.	
NTLM	Abbreviation for NT LAN Manager. User authentication method used by Windows NT or later. With the MD4 and MD5 encoding methods, passwords are encoded.	
NTP	Abbreviation for Network Time Protocol. The protocol for correctly adjusting the in- ternal clock of the computer over the network. In a hierarchical method, the time is adjusted with the server at the highest level using GPS to acquire the correct time, which is then referenced by each lower level host.	
OCR	Abbreviation for Optical Character Reader. A device or software that converts hand- written or printed documents to text data by optically scanning it and, through com- parison with a previously stored pattern, identifies the characters.	
OHP/OHT	Transparent sheet used for OHP (overhead projector). Used for a presentation, etc.	
OS	Abbreviation for Operating System. Basic software for controlling the system of a computer. Windows, MacOS, and Unix are Operating Systems.	
Outline font	A font using lines and curves to display an outline of a character. Large-size characters can be displayed on a screen or printed with no jagged edges.	
Overseas communication	This is a function to communicate with an overseas recipient. If an overseas commu- nication mode is set, the fax transmission is sent with a lower speed. Specifying an overseas transmission mode ensures the fax transmission is sent when faxing to the location where transmission conditions are poor, even within the country.	
Password TX	A function for sending a fax with a password. If the recipient's fax machine is set for closed network receptions, the sender's fax machine should transmit a fax with the password same as the closed network reception password.	
PASV	Abbreviation for PASsiVe. A mode for connecting to an FTP server from within a fire- wall. If this mode is not specified, the firewall will be considered inaccessible and the connection will be terminated, preventing the file from being sent.	
Pause	A temporary break in dialing. In this machine, each pause creates a one second break during dialing.	
PB	Push telephone line.	
PC-FAX	A function for sending a fax directly from a computer without using paper.	
PDF	Abbreviation for Portable Document Format. An electronically formatted document which uses the .pdf extension. Based on the Post-Script format, you can use the free Adobe Acrobat Reader software to view documents.	
PDL	Abbreviation for Page Description Language. The language for specifying the print image per page to a printer when printing using a page printer.	
Peer-to-peer	A network format that allows connected devices to communicate without using a dedicated server.	
Pixel	The smallest unit of an image.	
Plug-and-play	Ability to automatically find and use the appropriate driver when a peripheral device is connected to a computer.	
Polling	This is a function for sending a document loaded on the machine or stored in the memory when requested by the recipient.	

Term	Description	
Port Number	The number that identifies the transmission port for each process running on a com- puter on the network. The same port cannot be used by multiple processes.	
POP	Abbreviation for Post Office Protocol. A protocol for retrieving E-Mail messages from a mail server. Currently, POP3 (the third version of POP) is most often used.	
POP3	Abbreviation for Post Office Protocol - Version 3. A common transmission protocol (transmission rules) used for the transmission and reception of E-Mail. This has various functions, including mail box authentication, confirmation of E-Mail downloads and list information, and deletion of E-Mails.	
POP Before SMTP Authenti- cation	A user authentication method for sending E-Mail messages. First, the reception op- eration is performed and the user is authenticated by the POP server. Then, IP ad- dresses where the user was successfully authenticated by the POP server are permitted to use the SMTP server. This method prevents third parties without per- mission to use the mail server from sending mail messages.	
PostScript	A typical page-descriptive language developed by Adobe and is commonly used for high quality printing.	
PPD	Abbreviation for PostScript Printer Description. A file used to describe the resolution, usable paper size, and the PostScript printer model special information.	
PPI	Abbreviation for Pixels Per Inch. Unit of resolution mainly used in monitors and scan- ners. Indicates the number of pixels per inch.	
Preview	A function that allows you to view an image before processing a print or scan job.	
Print Job	Print request transmitted from a computer to a printing device.	
Print queue	A software system which queues the generated print job in the devices.	
Printer buffer	Memory domain temporarily used for data processing of a print job.	
Printer driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a printer.	
Program address	This is a function for registering recipient's fax numbers where faxes are frequently sent and received and preset transmission operation procedures. By simply pressing the program key, the address is specified and the communication can be automatically performed with the specified functions.	
Property	Attribute information When using a printer driver, various functions can be specified in the file properties. In the file properties, you can check the attribute information of the file.	
Protocol	The rules that allow computers to communicate with other computers or peripheral devices	
Proxy server	A server that is installed to act as an intermediary connection between each client and different servers to effectively ensure security over the entire system for Internet connections.	
PServer	A printer server module under a NetWare environment. Monitors, changes, pauses, restarts, or cancels a print job.	
Queue name	Name specified to each device that allows printing when network printing.	
Quick memory transmission	This is the method to start sending a fax transmission by scanning one page of the document at the same time. Even in a case of multiple documents, this function can be used to send the document without straining the memory capability.	
RAW port number	The TCP port number used when the RAW protocol is selected for Windows TCP printing. Usually set to 9100.	
realm (IPP setting)	Region for performing security functions. This organizes authentication information such as the user name and password, and defines the security rules in the region.	
Receiving	This is the condition where the fax machine answers the call.	
Redial	This is a function for dialing a fax number again after waiting for a specified length of time, such as when the recipient's line is busy. You can select either to redial manually or to redial automatically the number.	
Reference Allowed Level	A feature for specifying settings so that only certain people are able to view certain destination information for the purpose information security. When synchronized with user authentication, only information with an access permission level matching that specified for the user can be viewed.	
Referral setting (LDAP setting)	If there is no corresponding data on the LDAP server searched for the destination, specify which LDAP server should be searched next or specify an LDAP server. Specify whether or not the multifunctional product searches this specified LDAP server.	

Term	Description
Relay broadcast	This is a function to send the broadcast the fax via other fax (called as a relay distribution station). When there are multiple broadcast destinations at distant places, one of the broadcast destination is specified to the relay station and the entire amount of the communication charges can be reduced by doing the relay transmission from the relaying station.
Relay distribution station	A feature to broadcast the fax to the relay distribution destination by receiving the re- lay request from the relay instruction station. The relay distribution function is not available in this machine.
Relay instruction station	The fax machine that sends the relay broadcast request.
Remote RX	A function to issue a directive for receiving a call via an external phone, using a re- mote reception number.
Resending	This function retries sending specific documents stored in the memory, which were not successful sent, to either the same destination or another destination.
Resolution	Displays the ability to reproduce the details of images and print matter correctly.
RIP	Abbreviation for Raster Image Processor. Process that develops picture images from described text data using the PostScript page description language. The processor is usually integrated in the printer.
Samba	UNIX server software that uses SMB (Server Message Block) so that UNIX system resources can be used from a Windows environment.
Scan size	This is a function to specify the scanning size of a document and transmitting it. If the width of the paper in the recipient's fax machine is smaller than that of the transmitted document, the fax is normally reduced when it is printed. If you do not wish to reduce the fax, specify a document size that is same as the size of the paper in the recipient's fax machine in order to send the fax at its original size.
Scanning	When the scanning operation is carried out, an image is read with the row of image sensors that gradually move. The direction that the image sensors are moved is called the main scanning direction, and the direction in which the image sensors are arranged is called the sub-scanning direction.
Screen font	A font for displaying text and symbols on a CRT monitor.
Screen frequency	Indicates the density of dots used to create an image.
Sender Name	The name of this machine. This name is printed as a part of the transmission source at the edge of the transmitted document from the recipient's machine.
Sending	Making a call. It is to send a document or to dial for pollings in case of fax.
Shared printer	A printer setup that enables the printer to be used by multiple computers connected to a server over a network.
Sharpness	This function sends a document after enhancing the edge of character.
Single-page TIFF	A single TIFF file that contains only a single page.
SLP	Abbreviation for Service Location Protocol. A protocol capable of finding services over a TCP/IP network and automatically specifying a client.
S/MIME	Abbreviation for Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions. A protocol for adding features such as encryption and digital signatures to MIME (E- Mail operations). With this standard, public key encryption, which uses a different key for encryption and decryption, is used.
SMB	Abbreviation for Server Message Block. A protocol mainly used by Microsoft Win- dows to share files and printers over a network.
SMTP	Abbreviation for Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. A protocol for sending and forward- ing E-Mail.
SNMP	Abbreviation for Simple Network Management Protocol. A management protocol in a network environment using TCP/IP.
Spool	Abbreviation for Simultaneous Peripheral Operation On-Line. With this function, printer output data is not sent directly to the printer, but it is temporarily stored in another location first, and later sent to the printer in bulk.
SSDP	Abbreviation for Simple Service Discovery Protocol Protocol used to detect the UPnP device on the network.
SSL/TLS	Abbreviation for Secure Socket Layer/Transport Layer Security. The encoding method for safely transmitting data between the Web server and browser.
Subnet Mask	The unit used to divide a TCP/IP network into small networks (subnetworks). It is used to identify the bits in a network address that are higher than the IP address

Term	Description	
Sub-scanning direction	The vertical direction for scanning documents.	
Super G3 (SG3)	This is a G3 communication mode standardized by ITU-T V.34. The communication becomes possible at a higher speed (high speed 33,400 bps) than that of the usual G3 communication.	
TCP/IP	Abbreviation for Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. This is the de facto standard Internet protocol. IP addresses are used to identify respective network devices.	
TCP Socket	Refers to the network API used with TCP/IP. A transmission route is opened using this socket to input and output normal files.	
Temporary document saving	This is a function for automatically saving the received document in the memory when the machine cannot print the received document, such as when the machine has run out of paper. When paper is added, the document that has been temporarily saved is printed.	
Temporary Forward transmis- sion	This is a function to manually forward the received document on hold, by using the setting confirmation button of the control panel. The transmission is used when the fax/scan screen is been displayed, or the operation is being stopped due to paper misfeed or running out of paper.	
Thumbnail	A small image that shows the contents of an image or document file (the image dis- played when the file is opened).	
TIFF	Abbreviation for Tagged Image File Format. One of the file formats for saving image data. (The file extension is ".tif"). Depending on the tag indicating the data type, information for various image formats can be saved in a single image data.	
Timer TX	A function for sending a fax at a specified time. Sending faxes at discounted calling times, such as late at night or early in the morning can help to reduce the transmission costs.	
Transmission reservation	This is a function to reserve the next transmission while current transmission or print- ing.	
Transmission speed	Specifies the transmission speed of modem for fax. In this function, the fax can be communicated at a high transmission speed of 33,600 bps. When overseas communication mode is set, it communicates at a high transmission speed a with a noise of 7200 bps or 4800 bps.	
Transmission source record	When a fax has been sent, the transmission time, name, telephone number, page number that is to be printed at the edge of the document saved on the recipient's machine.	
Transmission time	The time needed to send a fax. The higher the resolution or larger the paper, the longer the transmission takes.	
TrueType	An outline font. It was developed by Apple Computer and Microsoft. It is used as a standard by Macintosh and Microsoft Windows. It can be used both on a display and in print.	
TSI	Abbreviation for Transmitting Subscriber Identification. ID of the fax transmission ter- minal.	
TWAIN	The interface standard for imaging devices, such as scanners and digital cameras, and for applications, such as graphics software. In order to use a TWAIN-compliant device, the TWAIN driver is required.	
Uninstall	To delete software installed on a computer.	
USB	Abbreviation for Universal Serial Bus. A general interface standard for connecting a mouse, printer, and other devices to a computer.	
V34	This is a communication mode used at the time of fax communication of super G3. There are cases when the communication is not possible in super G3 mode depend- ing on the telephone line conditions when the recipient's machine/ own machine is connected to a telephone line via private branch exchange. In such cases, it is rec- ommended to communicate with super G3 mode turned off by deselecting the V34.	
Web browser	Software for viewing Web pages. Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator are this type of software.	
WINS	Abbreviation for Windows Internet Naming Service. A service for recalling name serv- ers for the conversion of computer names and IP address in a Windows environment.	
Zone	A name given in an AppleTalk network. This is used to group multiple devices on an AppleTalk network.	
Z-Folded Original	This function first confirms the document size which cannot detect correct document size due to folds, then scans and sends the document data after verifying the correct document size. This function can be used only when the document is scanned by ADF.	



## 4 Index

## 4.1 Index

Numerics	
2-Sided Print	

### Α

Account track	1-100
Account Track Registration	1-103
Active Directory	1-104
Address Book	1-168
Address registration	1-155
Admin. E-mail Address	1-27, 1-52
Administrator mode	1-7, 1-156
Administrator password	
Administrator Settings	2-2
Annotation User Box	1-160, 1-161
APOP Authentication	
AppleTalk	
AppleTalk Settings	
Application	

## В

Banner sheet	1-163
Bind Direction	1-163
Bonjour	1-71
Bonjour Setting	2-4
Box tab	1-158
Bulletin Board User Box	1-160
Bulletin User Box	1-161

## С

Certificate	1-8,	1-13,	1-14,	1-15
Counter				1-95

## D

Date and time	1-18
Default Gateway	1-3
Default Paper Size	1-163
Detail Settings	2-14
Device Mail Address	
Digital signature	1-33
Direct Hosting	1-23
Direct hosting service	1-23
DNS Domain Name	1-3
DNS Host Name	1-3
DNS Server	1-3
Domain	1-108
Download	1-14
DSN Request	1-54
Dynamic DNS	1-3
E	
E-mail1-25, 1-33, 1-36, 1-90	0.1-174
	-,

E-mail Address       1-15         E-mail address       1-188         E-Mail Settings       2-4         Encryption       1-36         Encryption Strength       1-12         Export       1-146         External memory       1-143         External server 1-105, 1-109, 1-112, 1-116, 1-119, 1-18	85
F	
Fax       1-168, 1-174         Flash       1-6         Format All Destination       1-148         FTP       1-44, 1-168, 1-174         FTP Settings       2-4	
G	
Get Request Code         1-152           Group         1-174           Group destination         1-173	
Н	
Header Information	
1	
lcon1-172	
IEEE802.1X	
Import 1-146	
Install License 1-153	
Interface1-167	
Internet Fax 1-168, 1-174	
Internet fax	
IP Address Fax	
IP address fax	
IP address filtering 1-122	
IP Application Method1-3	
IPP	
IPPS	
IPv6	
L	
LDAP over SSL1-42, 1-121	
LDAP Settings2-4	
Limiting Access to Destinations	

Logout ..... 1-156

Δ

Low Power mode	1-144
LPD	
LPR	1-64
М	

	- 4
MAC Address	1-4
Machine authentication	1-99
Machine Setting	1-52
Maintenance	1-143
MDN Request	1-54
MDN Response	1-58
Meter Count	1-98

#### Ν

NDPS	1-75
NDS	1-112
NDS over TCP/IP	1-115
NetBIOS Name	1-66
NetWare	1-73
NetWare Settings	2-4
Network Fax Settings	2-14
Network Setting Clear	1-147
Network Settings	2-2, 2-4
Network Speed	1-4
NTLM	1-22
NTLM authentication	1-108
NTP	1-19

## 0

OpenAPI	
Output Tray .	

### Ρ

PageScope Web Connection	1-5, 1-7
Paper Tray	1-163
PCL	1-165
PDL	1-163
Permission of Address Change	1-155
POP	1-57
POP before SMTP	1-29
POP over SSL	1-31
Port9100	1-64
Power Save	1-144
Prefix/Suffix	1-188
Printer Setting tab	1-163
Program destination	1-174
Proxy Server	1-45, 1-47
PS	1-165
Public key	1-36
Public user	
Punch	1-163

## R

RAW port	
Reference allowed group	1-154
Relay User Box	1-160, 1-161
Reset	1-147, 1-148

<b>ROM Version</b>	 1-151

S Sleep mode ...... 1-144 SLP ..... 1-62 SMB .....1-65, 1-168, 1-174 SMTP ......1-26 SMTP Authentication ...... 1-29 SMTP over SSL ..... 1-28 SMTP RX ...... 1-61 SNMP Settings ......2-4 SSDP ..... 1-139 SSL using mode ......1-13 Staple ..... 1-163 Start TLS ...... 1-28 Store Address tab ..... 1-168 Subject ...... 1-184 Subnet Mask ...... 1-3 Support information ......1-149 System box ..... 1-160, 1-161

## T

TCP Socket	. 1-6, 1-136, 1-137
TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)	
TCP Socket Settings	
TCP/IP	
TCP/IP Settings	
Text	
Time Zone	1-18
Timer	
Total Counter	
TRAP	
TWAIN	1-62

## U

User authentication 1-100, 1-106	5, 1-110, 1-113, 1-117,
1-120	
User Box	1-168, 1-174
User box	1-158, 1-159
User mode	1-156
User Registration	1-101

#### W

1-78, 1-81
1-46, 1-168, 1-174
1-140
1-145



http://konicaminolta.com